1.0 Introduction

Let's get started with your first Interactive Audio lesson. In this introductory lesson, Nikita and Rohan exchange hellos. Not only will you learn how to greet someone in Hindi you'll also find out how to ask them how they're doing.

If you are completely new to Hindi then I recommend listening to this first lesson a few times to train your ear to the language. You can also test your own pronunciation with our fantastic voice recognition software, Rocket Record! And when you're ready, reinforce what you have learned by doing the Tests.

Conversation Transcript

Nikita

नमस्कार ,रोहन !
namaskāra ,Rōhana !
Hello, Rohan!

Rohan

नमस्कार निकिता , कैसी हैं आप?
namaskāra Nikitā , kaisī haĩ āpa?
Hello, Nikita! How are you?

Nikita

अच्छी हूँ, और आप?
acchī hū̃, aura āpa?
Good! And you?

Rohan

बहुत अच्छा, मैं बहुत अच्छा हूँ ।
bahuta acchā, maĩ bahuta acchā hū̃ .
Very good. I’m very good

Extra Vocabulary

आप कैसे हैं? / कैसे है आप?
āpa kaisē haĩ? / kaisē haĩ āpa?
How are you? (speaking to a man)

कैसे है ?
kaisē hai?
How are you?

नहीं नहीं
nahī̃ nahī̃
No, No

तुम
tuma
You (familiar)

अच्छा हूँ
acchā hū̃
Well / Good (spoken by a man)

धन्यवाद |
dhanyavāda
Thank you.

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very well / very good (spoken by a man)

मैं अच्छा हूँ |
maĩ acchā hū̃
I am well.

मैं ठीक हूँ |
maĩ ṭhīka hū̃
I am well.

ठीक
ṭhīka
Well

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Very good!

इस वक्त
isa vakta
At the moment

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.1 Talking about Yourself

In this next lesson we'll practice saying hello while expanding on our social graces. You'll find out how to ask someone where they're from and reply in turn, as well as receive a compliment when mentioning your beginner status.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

शुभ दिन !
śubha dina !
Good day.

Nikita

शुभ दिन !
śubha dina !
Good day.

Rohan

आपका नाम क्या है?
āpakā nāma kyā hai?
What's your name?

Nikita

मेरा नाम निकिता है ।
mērā nāma nikitā hai
My name is Nikita.

Rohan

आप कहाँ से आई है ?
āpa kahā̃ sē āī hai?
Where are you from?

Nikita

मैं अमरिका से आई हूँ
maĩ amarikā sē āī hū̃
I come from America.

Rohan

आप अच्छी हिन्दी बोलती हैं ।
āpa acchī hindī bōlatī haĩ
You speak good Hindi.

Nikita

थोडी सी,मुझे सीखना पसंद है
thōḍī sī,mujhē sīkhanā pasanda hai
Just a little bit. I enjoy learning.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē

Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

अपने बारे में बातचीत
apanē bārē mẽ bātacīta
Talking about yourself

नमस्कार! कैसे है आप?
namaskāra! kaisē hai āpa?
Hello! How are you?

अच्छा हूँ, और आप?
acchā hū̃, aura āpa?
I am good, and you?

बहुत अच्छा |
bahuta acchā
Very well

धन्यवाद |
dhanyavāda
Thank you

बिल्कुल
bilkula
Agreed (nothing else to add to conversation)/ absolutely

सुप्रभात
suprabhāta
Good morning

शुभ सन्ध्या
śubha sandhyā
Good evening

माफ़ कीजिए?
māfa kījiē?
Sorry? (Pardon? What? Excuse me?)

मैं निकिता हूँ |
maĩ nikitā hū̃
I am Nikita.

कौन हैं आप?
kauna haĩ āpa?
Who are you?

कहाँ से आए हैं आप?
kahā̃ sē āē haĩ āpa?
Where do you come from? (spoken to a man)

संयुक्त राज्य
saṁyukta rājya
The United States

हिन्दुस्थान / भारत
hindusthāna / bhārata
India

शांदार!
śāndāra
Very good!

महान

mahāna
Great

सिर्फ़
sirf
Only

मैं हिन्दी सीख रहा हूँ|
maĩ hindī sīkha rahā hũ
I'm learning Hindi

क्या आप हिन्दी बोलते हैं?
kyā āpa hindī bōlatē haĩ?
Do you speak Hindi?

मैं सीखता हूँ ।
maĩ sīkhatā hũ
I learn

मैं बोलता हूँ ।
maĩ bōlatā hũ
I speak

अंग्रेज़ी
angrēzī
English

क्या आप अंग्रेज़ी बोलते हैं?
kyā āpa angrēzī bōlatē haĩ?
Do you speak English?

हाँ
hā̃
Yes

नहीं
nahī̃
No

बहुत अच्छा किया, नमस्ते
bahuta acchā kiyā, namastē
Very good, goodbye.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.2 Doing Coffee

The first of our very refreshing lessons, "Doing Coffee" takes you to the counter to order a piping hot cup of Indian 'kofee'. But not so fast... you'll have to learn a few things in Hindi to ask for what you want or need in your cup of java!

Conversation Transcript

Nikita

मुझे सहायता चाहिए ।
mujhē sahāyatā cāhiē
I need help.

Rohan

कैसी, किस तरह की?
kaisī, kisa taraha kī?
Help with what?

Nikita

मुझे कुछ गरम पीने के लिए चाहिए ।
mujhē kucha garama pīnē kē liē cāhiē
I want something warm to drink.

Rohan

क्या लेना पसंद करेंगी आप?
kyā lēnā pasanda karēngī āpa?
What would you like?

Nikita

मैं कॉफ़ी लेना पसंद करूँगी ।
maĩ Kŏfī lēnā pasanda karū̃gī
I would like a coffee.

Rohan

दूध और शक्कर सहित?
dūdha aura śakkara sahita?
With milk and sugar?

Nikita

मैं दोनों लूँगी, धन्यवाद ।
maĩ dōnō̃ lū̃gī, dhanyavāda
I’ll have both, thanks.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हि'दी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

शुभ दिन
śubha dina
Good day

नमस्कार, रोहन!
namaskāra, rōhana
Hello, Rohan!

नमस्कार, निकिता! कैसी हो तुम?
namaskāra, nikitā! kaisī hō tuma?
Hello, Nikita! How are you?

अच्छी हूँ! और तुम??
acchī hū̃! aura tuma??
Good! And you?

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very good

मैं बहुत अच्छा हूँ ।
maĩ bahuta acchā hū̃
I'm very good

आप का नाम क्या है?
āpa kā nāma kyā hai?
What's your name?

मेरा नाम निकिता है ।
mērā nāma nikitā hai
My name is Nikita.

आप कहाँ से आई हैं?
āpa kahā̃ sē āī haĩ?
Where are you from?

मैं ग्रेट ब्रिटेन से आई हूँ ।
maĩ grēṭa briṭēna sē āī hū̃ .
I come from Great Britain.

आप अच्छी हिन्दी बोलती हैं|
āpa acchī hindī bōlatī haĩ
You speak good Hindi.

सिर्फ़ थोडी बहुत । मुझे सीखना पसंद है ।
sirfa thōḍī bahuta . mujhē sīkhanā pasanda hai.
Just a little bit. I enjoy learning.

क्या आप तैयार हैं?
kyā āpa taiyāra haĩ?
Are you ready?

मदद
madada
Help

मेरी मदद करो
Meri madad karo!
Please Help me !

मुझे चाहिए
mujhē cāhiē
I want

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very good!

गरम चोकोलेट
garama cōkōlēṭa
Hot chocolate

कुछ खाने के लिए
kucha khānē kē liē
Something to eat

मुझे कोफ़ी चाहिए
mujhē kōfī cāhiē
I want coffee

मैं कुछ गरम पीने के लिए पसंद करूँगा ।
maĩ kucha garama pīnē kē liē pasanda karū̃gā .
I would like something hot to drink

मुझे कुछ गरम खाने के लिए चाहिए
mujhē kucha garama khānē kē liē cāhiē
I want something hot to eat

अंतराल
antarāla
A break

मुझे अंतराल चाहिए
mujhē antarāla cāhiē
I want a break

मैं अंतराल लेना चाहूँगा
maĩ antarāla lēnā cāhū̃gā
I would like a break

एक चाय
ēka cāya
One Tea

यह
yaha
This

क्या आप कोफ़ी में दूध लेना पसंद करेंगे?
kyā āpa kōfī mẽ dūdha lēnā pasanda karēngē?
Would you like coffee with milk ?

क्या आप कोफ़ी में शक्कर लेना पसंद करेंगे?
kyā āpa kōfī mẽ śakkara lēnā pasanda karēngē?
Would you like a coffee with sugar ?

मुझे दोनों दीजिए
mujhē dōnō̃ dījiē
Give me both.

मैं पालक और आलू लेना पसंद करूँगा , धन्यवाद ।
maĩ pālaka aura ālū lēnā pasanda karū̃gā , dhanyavāda .
I’d like spinach and potato, thanks.

मैं क्लब सैंडविच लेना पसंद करूँगी , धन्यवाद ।
maĩ klaba saiṇḍavica lēnā pasanda karū̃gī , dhanyavāda .
I’d like a club sandwich, thanks.

आप कितनी शक्कर लेंगे?
āpa kitanī śakkara lēngē?
How many sugars do you take?

मैं दो शक्कर लूँगा
maĩ dō śakkara lū̃gā
I take two sugars

मैं एक टाक्सी लूँगा
maĩ ēka ṭāksī lū̃gā
I'll take a taxi.

मैं दूध और शक्कर सहित कोफ़ी लेना पसंद करूँगा |
maĩ dūdha aura śakkara sahita kōfī lēnā pasanda karū̃gā
I'd like a cup of coffee with milk and sugar.

मैं एक दूधवाली चाय लेना पसंद करूँगा , धन्यवाद ।
maĩ ēka dūdhavālī cāya lēnā pasanda karū̃gā , dhanyavāda
I'd like a cup of tea with milk, thanks.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.3 Learning Hindi

In today's lesson we'll cover the basics on being understood in Hindi. Everybody needs survival phrases when they learn a new language, and we'll come to your rescue in this lesson with a few ways to manage a conversation that is going too fast, or might just be a little too advanced for you in the early days. You'll learn how to ask someone to speak slower, find out if they can understand what you're saying, and even confess your learner status!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या आप हिन्दी बोलती हैं ?
kyā āpa hindī bōlatī haĩ ?
Do you speak Hindi?

Nikita

हाँ, थोडी सी ।
hā̃, thōḍī sī .
Yes, a little.

Rohan

क्या आप मुझे समझ सकती हैं?
kyā āpa mujhē samajha sakatī haĩ?
Can you understand me?

Nikita

हाँ, लेकिन ...
hā̃, lēkina ....
Yes, but……

क्या आप और धीरे बोलेंगे?
kyā āpa aura dhīrē bōlēngē?
could you speak a bit slower?

Rohan

हाँ, बिलकुल...
hā̃, bilakula...
Yes, of course.

क्या अब बेहतर है?
kyā aba bēhatara hai?
Is this better?

Nikita

हाँ, धन्यवाद ।
hā̃, dhanyavāda .
Yes, thank you.

Rohan

क्या आप फ़्रान्सी भी बोलती हैं?
kyā āpa frānsī bhī bōlatī haĩ?
Do you speak French as well?

Nikita

मुझे नहीं पता , वह क्या है?
mujhē nahī̃ patā , vaha kyā hai?
I don't know. What is that?

Rohan

[ह- ह- ह -ह ...]
[ha- ha- ha -ha ...]
Ha-ha-ha-ha

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हि'दी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

नमस्कार , कैसे चल रहा हैं?
namaskāra , kaisē cala rahā haĩ?
Greetings, how's it going?

मुझे मदद चाहिए
mujhē madada cāhiē
I need help.

किस तरह की?
kisa taraha kī?
Help with what?

मुझे कुछ गरम पीने के लिए चाहिए
mujhē kucha garama pīnē kē liē cāhiē
I want something warm to drink.

क्या लेना पसंद करेंगे आप?
kyā lēnā pasanda karēngē āpa?
What would you like?

मैं कोफ़ी लेना पसंद करूंगी
maĩ kōfī lēnā pasanda karūngī
I would like a coffee.

दूध और शक्कर सहित?
dūdha aura śakkara sahita?
With milk and sugar?

मैं दोनों लूंगी, धन्यवाद
maĩ dōnō̃ lūngī, dhanyavāda
I'll have both, thanks.

क्या आप तैयार हो?
kyā āpa taiyāra hō?
Are you ready?

आप अच्छी हिन्दी बोलती हैं
āpa acchī hindī bōlatī haĩ
You speak Hindi well.

क्या आप हिन्दी बोल सकती हैं?
kya aap Hindi bol sakti hain?
Do you speak Hindi? (informal when speaking to a woman)

नहीं

nahī̃
No

हाँ मैं हिन्दी बोलता हूँ
hā̃ . maĩ hindī bōlatā hū̃
Yes. I speak Hindi.

मैं हिन्दी नहीं बोलता
maĩ hindī nahī̃ bōlatā
No. I do not speak Hindi.

आप हिन्दी बोलते हैं
āpa hindī bōlatē haĩ
You speak Hindi (to a man).

मैं हिन्दी सीखता हूँ
maĩ hindī sīkhatā hū̃
I'm learning Hindi.

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very good!

अंग्रेज़ी
angrēzī
English

कृपया
kṛpayā
Please

क्या आप कृपया वह दोहराएंगे ?
kyā āpa kṛpayā vaha dōharāēngē ?
Can you repeat that please?

प्राकृतिक /खुदरती
prākṛtika /khudaratī
Natural / By Nature

मैं हिन्दी, अंग्रेज़ी और फ़्रांसी बोलती हूँ।
maĩ hindī, angrēzī aur frā̃sī bōlti hū̃
I speak Hindi, English, and French.

मैं समझा नहीं
maĩ samajhā nahī̃
I have not understood. / I did not understand.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.4 Booking a Room

We all need a place to rest our weary heads at night. In this lesson we'll learn key phrases on how to reserve a room. Along the way you'll find out words and phrases for booking your accommodation, including asking how much, finding out about amenities and most importantly- if breakfast is included!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

होटेल मयूर में स्वागत है!
hōṭēla mayūra mẽ svāgata hai!
Welcome to the Hotel Mayur!

Nikita

एक कमरे का एक रात का किराया कितना है?
ēka kamarē kā ēka rāta kā kirāyā kitanā hai?
How much is it for a room per night?

Rohan

कितने लोगों के लिए?
kitanē lōgõ kē liyē?
For how many people?

Nikita

दो लोगों के लिए ।
dō lōgõ kē liyē .
For two.

Rohan

उसकी कीमत 800 रुपैये हैं ।
usakī kīmata 800 rupaiyē haĩ .
That costs Rs 800.

Nikita

क्या हमे निजी स्नानघर मिलेगा?
kyā hamē nijī snānaghara milēgā?
Do we have our own bathroom?

Rohan

यहाँ हर कमरे के साथ निजी स्नानघर है ।
yahā̃ hara kamarē kē sātha nijī snānaghara hai .
All rooms have their own bathroom.

Nikita

नाश्ता कितने का है?
nāśtā kitanē kā hai?
How much does the breakfast cost?

Rohan

यह कीमत नाश्ते सहित है ।
yaha kīmata nāśtē sahita hai .
Breakfast is included

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हि'दी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

क्या आप हिन्दी बोलती हैं?
kyā āpa hindī bōlatī haĩ?
Do you speak Hindi?

हाँ, थोडी सी
hā̃, thōḍī sī
Yes, a little.

क्या आप मुझे समझ सकती हैं?
kyā āpa mujhē samajha sakatī haĩ?
Can you understand me?

हाँ, लेकिन.. क्या आप और धीरे बोलेंगे ?
hā̃, lēkina.. kyā āpa aura dhīrē bōlēngē ?
Yes, but... could you speak a bit slower?

हाँ, बिलकुल ... क्या अब बेहतर हैं?
hā̃, bilakula ... kyā aba bēhatara haĩ?
Yes, of course. Is this better?

हाँ, धन्यवाद
hā̃, dhanyavāda
Yes, thank you.

क्या आप फ्रेंच भी बोलते हैं?
kyā āpa frēñca bhī bōlatī haĩ?
Do you speak French as well?

मैं नहीं जानती. वह क्या है ?
maĩ nahī̃ jānatī. vaha kyā hai ?
I don't know. What is that?

क्या तुम तैयार हो?
kyā tuma taiyāra hō?
Are you ready?

इस होटेल
isa hōṭēla
This hotel

उसकी कीमत क्या है?
usakī kīmata kyā hai?
What does that cost ?

एक कमरा कितने का है?
ēka kamarā kitanē kā hai?
How much is a room?

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Good job

सप्ताह
saptāha
Week

पाँच लोगों के लिए
pā̃ca lōgō̃ kē liē
For five people

आठ सौ
āṭha sau
Eight hundred

हमारे पास है
hamārē pāsa hai
We have...

क्या हमारे पास कोफ़ी है ?
kyā hamārē pāsa kōfī hai ?
Do we have coffee?

क्या हमारे पास समय है ?
kyā hamārē pāsa samaya hai ?
Do we have time ?

सब कुशल हैं
saba kuśala haĩ
Everything's fine / All is well

क्या कीमत होटेल सहित है ?
kyā kīmata hōṭēla sahita hai ?
Is the hotel included?

शाबाश हम ने बहुत कुछ सीखे
śābāśa hama nē bahuta kucha sīkhē
Good work. We've learned a lot.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.5 Greetings

namaskāra! Welcome to the first Language and Culture lesson. Along with the mechanics of Hindi, you're also getting a great insight into Indian culture.

Hindi is the official language of India. It's spoken by people all over North India and taught in all Indian schools. There may be small variations in dialect from state to state. For example, the Hindi spoken in Central India sounds different to that spoken in Rajasthan. Each North Indian State has some regional variation and uses some words in unique ways.

Even though Hindi is not largely spoken in South India, people do have a general awareness of the language and almost everyone in the younger generation can read and write the national language.

In Hindi, the way the romanized word looks, and the way it sounds can be different. That's because the script used for Hindi, Devanagari, derives from Sanskrit. In Sanskrit each consonant character includes an *'a'* sound, called the *schwa*. In Hindi the *schwa* is often not pronounced.

So, for example, if the word in the Devanagari script is **नमस्कार,** romanized that's **namaskāra,** but in Hindi it's pronounced without the final *'a'*, **namaskār.**

Just **listen** to the way the native speakers say the words and phrases in the audio tracks **to learn how you should pronounce them.**

In today’s lesson, you’ll learn some common ways to greet people.

Are you ready to get started? Here we go then…

Common Greetings

In Hindi, *“namaskāra”* is the most common greeting, and it is very easy to use it correctly. Unlike in many other languages, this can be used to greet anyone during any time of the day. It's a bit like saying "hello".

A slightly less formal form of greeting is to say *“namastē”*. However there are no specific formal and informal greetings in Hindi and both terms are widespread and used in a variety of situations.

नमस्कार
namaskāra
Hello

सब का स्वागत है
saba kā svāgata hai
Welcome everyone!

नमस्ते
namastē
Hello

Religion forms a big part of cultural life in India and its influence can be seen in Hindi. Some elderly people may prefer to greet people of their generation with “*jaya rāma jī kī*” or "*rāma rāma*" meaning "Hail Ram", who was a Vedic King written about in the Hindu epic the Ramayana. In Muslim areas you may hear people greet each other by saying “*salām*” whereas Sikhs use the term “*sāt śrī akal*”. People with Gujarati ancestry may greet each other with “*jaya śrī kṛṣṇā*” meaning "Hail Krishna the incarnation of Vishnu, the almighty."

Don't sweat though, “*namaskāra*” is still the most common way to greet people irrespective of gender and age. It can be used to greet a group as well. Younger ones touch the feet of elders for blessings and in turn they embrace them or pat them on the back to show their affection.

If you want to really show that you're familiar with the language, learn a few more specific greetings.

सुप्रभातम

Suprabhātam
Good morning! (not commonly used)

शुभ सन्ध्या
śubha sandhyā
Good evening

शुभ रात्रि
śubha rātri
Good night

So after you've greeted someone with "*namaskāra*", then what? Well, you're likely to hear some of the following phrases:

आप कैसे हैं ?
āpa kaisē haĩ ?
How are you? (to a man)

आप कैसी हैं ?
āpa kaisī haĩ ?
How are you? (to a woman)

तुम कैसे हो ?
tuma kaisē hō ?
How are you? (to a younger man)

तुम कैसी हो ?
tuma kaisī hō ?
How are you? (to a younger woman)

आप खुश हैं ?
āpa khuśa haĩ ?
Are you happy?

क्या खबर है
kyā khabara hai
What's the news?

मैं ठीक हूँ
maĩ ṭhīka hū̃
I am fine

धन्यवाद
dhanyavāda
Thank you.

माफ़ कीजिए ।
māfa kījiē.
Excuse me

कृपया
kṛpayā
Please

Great work so far! All of these phrases are Hindi staples and you'll find yourself using them every day.

Much like in English the way we speak Hindi changes depending on who we are talking to. Lets look at some more specific phrases which will help you navigate all kinds of situations. First off, lets look at how we might greet our friends or people already known to us in Hindi.

क्या हाल है?
kyā hāla hai
How's it going?

बढ़िया!

badhiyā
Excellent!

और आप?
aura āpa?
And you?

Now lets look at how we might greet elderly people or people we wish to show respect to. Notice how the language changes and think of when you might use phrases like this.

आपकी तबियत कैसी है?
āpkī tabiyata kaisī hain?
How is your health?

आपकी दुआ!
āpkī duā
(Great) With your blessings!

आपसे मिलकर बहुत खुशी हुई
āpase milakara bahuta khuśī huī
It's a pleasure to meet you

Now that we've mastered how to greet people, lets take a moment to look at a couple of phrases which are helpful when you are leaving. Remember that both "*namaskāra*" and "*namastē*" mean goodbye as well as hello.

मैं चलु?
main chalu?
Shall I leave? (Polite form to say I'm leaving)

फिर मिलेंगे!
fir milenge
See you again soon!

Hey buddy!



The table above shows lots of phrases, some of which mean the same thing yet are different because of the gender or age of the person being addressed. Friends (particularly in Delhi) greet each other in a very casual manner, like *"are yaar"*, which is a bit like "Hi mate".

There are some forms of addressing which are gender specific.

ḍākṭara(doctor) - Pronounced as "*daakter*" with '*aa*' as in father. This word could have been borrowed from English and means "a doctor". You can address a male or female doctor using the same word.
śrī (Mister) - This title is used to address men.*Sri. Ram Gopal* is the same as *Mr. Ram Gopal.*

Women are addressed according to whether they are married or not.

kumārī (Miss)– for a young, unmarried woman
śrīmatī (Mrs)– for a married woman

Family is very important in India and many forms of addressing people are tied in with this. It is very common for young people to address the parents of friends, family friends or even shop keepers they see on a regular basis as "Auntie" or "Uncle". Similarly the phrase most commonly used to politely address unfamiliar males such as Rickshaw drivers is *"bhāī sahab"* which loosely translates Sir Brother or Mr Brother.

Ji Ji Ji!

One of the most common words in Hindi is the word *"jī".* When translated into English "*jī*" can be understood as Sir or Madam but it is more useful to think of it as a respect marker. It mainly operates to show the person being referred to that you respect them. It is normally added in after a name or title, for example "*Auntie jī".* When used by itself however, *"jī"* can mean yes, much in the same way

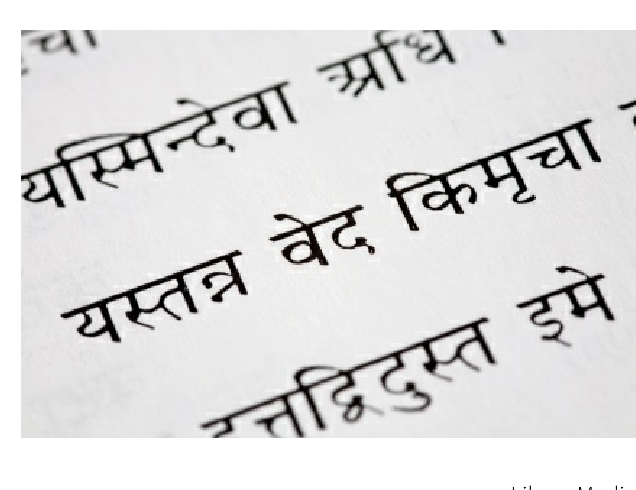
that in English we say "Ok" when someone is explaining something to us.

Culture: Dialects



Like many other languages Hindi too has different accents, depending on where you are in India. Hindi is spoken in the Indian states of Madhya Pradesh, Utharanchal, Maharashtra, Delhi, and almost all other Northern parts. The language may be influenced from each region’s local language. For instance, Hindi spoken in Punjab can have a greater Punjabi influence, spoken Hindi in Bihar can have Bhojpuri accent, and the version used by Maharashtrians may have a flavour of Marathi and so on.

India is famous for its “Unity in Diversity”. People of India differ in language, religion, food and living styles. You can feel this difference when you travel from one place to another in India. Think of these varied attributes of Indian culture as different kinds of flowers in a bouquet and Hindi is the string which binds the bouquet together!



Indian culture is believed to be evolved in the valleys of river Indus, has been greatly influenced by an array of foreign invasions from the likes of the Moguls, the Greeks, Portuguese, Dutch, French and finally the English. The national language may also have been influenced by such vast exposure to languages. By absorbing the useful features of other invaded languages Hindi has strengthened its vocabulary, but still maintains its originality.

1.6 Where are you from?

As a foreigner in India, one of the most common questions you'll be asked is where you are from. In this lesson you'll learn how to say where you're from as well as some words that are essential for talking about yourself or others. They're just little ones like "I, you, him, we..." but they make life a lot easier! You'll also learn how to pronounce the first ten numbers in Hindi script, as well as a whole lot of country's names.

As a foreigner in India, you are bound to attract a certain amount of curiosity. Many Indian people are happy and surprised to learn that someone from outside of India has taken the effort to learn some Hindi. Conversing about where you are from is a great way to get to know people and to build your confidence.

आप कहाँ से हैं?
āpa kahā̃ sē haĩ?
Where are you from?

Talking about countries in Hindi

Before we get into the more grammatical side of today's lesson, let's look at the following country names. You can look for the English translation and try to sound them out.

Press the play button to hear the word as it is pronounced. In many cases, it will be very similar to the English word you already know.

भारत
bhārata
India

अमेरिका
amērikā
America

इंगलैंड
ingalaiṇḍa
England

फ्रांस
phrā̃sa
France

जर्मनी
jarmanī
Germany

चीन
cīna
China

रूस
rūsa
Russia

न्यूज़ीलैंड
nyūzīlaiṇḍa
New Zealand

ऑस्ट्रेलिया
ôsṭrēliyā

Australia

कनडा
kanaḍā
Canada

When introducing yourself, you could say "I am from America" *"maĩ amērikā sē hū̃ "*or "I am American" *"maĩ amērikī hū̃ "*(m/f). Another common way of expressing where you are from is to say I am OF America "*maĩ amērikā kī hū̃ ".*

kyā āpa amērikā se hain?

Due to the popularity of Hollywood movies in India, many people in smaller towns and villages mainly associate foreigners with America. The following phrases are ones you might find yourself repeating, take a look at them and imagine how you would say them for yourself.

क्या आप अमेरिका से हैं?
kyā āpa amērikā sē haĩ?
Are you from America?

जी नहीं, मैं न्यूजीलैंड से हूँ.
jī nahĩ, maĩ nyūzīlaiṇḍa sē hū̃
No, I am from New Zealand

क्या आप भारत की हैं?
kyā āpa bhārata kī haĩ?
Are you Indian?

जी हाँ, मैं भारतीय हूँ
jī hān, maĩ bhāratīya hū̃
Yes, I am Indian

Personal Pronouns

Don't worry, we're not going to get into one of those grammar lessons which no normal person can understand. Personal pronouns are just the grammatical name for the words that we use to identify ourselves and others, such as "you, me, he, she, we" and "they". Some of these words you will already be familiar with from the associated audio lesson "Basic Greetings", but others will be new for you.

Listen carefully, and try to get your pronunciation of these words as close as possible to the native speakers. Rely on what is spoken rather than what is written. What is written is just our best possible estimation of Hindi words written with English letters.

मैं
maĩ
I / Me

तू
Tu
You (singular, very informal!)

तुम
Tuma
You (singular, increased dignity)

आप
āpa
You (higher degree of respect)

वह
vaha

He (far away)

वह
vaha
She (far away)

वे
vē
They

हम
hama
We

Please Note!

While in English we only use "You" to refer to the second person, in Hindi there are 3! It will take time to understand how each of these should be used appropriately but for the mean time, remember these two important points.

1. The pronoun "*Tu*" is highly informal. In fact, it is most often used to address loved ones, Gods or dogs! Addressing a person who is not familiar as " *Tu*" can be construed as an insult so it is best to stay clear of using this until you are certain you will not offend.
2. If in doubt, stay formal! You will never offend anyone by using the term "*āpa*".

Most Indian people understand the difficulties faced when learning Hindi and want to help. If someone corrects the pronoun you have used don't feel disheartened. Pronoun perfection will come with time.

He/She/It

No doubt you have noticed that the words used for He and She are in fact the same in Hindi. This is because the words *"vaha"/"yaha"* and *"vē"/"yē"* are known as gender neutral pronouns. This means that the one word can mean He, She or it. This makes things easier for the learner, only 1 word to learn to mean 3 different things!

It might at first be confusing to understand the difference between *"vaha"/"yaha"* and *"vē"/"yē"*. Over time you will begin to understand how each of these should be used appropriately. It is sometimes useful to think of the words as phrases instead. So instead of thinking of it as the English word He, She or it try thinking of it as 'This woman here', 'That man there' or 'Those books there'. Look at the sentences below and see if you can start to understand the different. As there is no distinction between male/female in pronouns, we have to rely on the context to know who or what is being referred to.

वह लडकी जर्मन है
vaha ladakī jarmana hai
That girl is German

ये इंग्लैंड से हैं
yē ingalaiṇḍa sē haĩ
They/Those are from England

वे भारतीय हैं
vē bhāratīya haĩ
They/These are Indian

यह कनडा से है
yaha kanaḍā sē hai
He/She/It is from Canada

So far, so good! You see it's not really that complex. Remember that with time, you'll find this sort of learning much easier.

In our next grammar lesson, you'll learn how to use possessive words like "mine, your, his, her, ours" and "them". For now though, be sure to practice all these personal pronouns so that you can say them without seeing anything in writing.

Culture: Greetings

Seeing as you've been learning all about how to meet new friends, we thought we'd give you a "heads up" on some of the cultural norms in India. Knowledge of these cultural norms can be just as important, if not more important, than the actual words you say when meeting new friends. If you're not "in the know", it's easy to offend people, or be offended!



As in most places, handshakes are the norm amongst people meeting for the first time. Another Indian way is putting your hands together with flat palms, just like you clap without any sound and say "*namastē*". A very interesting point is that you can use this way of greeting when you meet some one and when you say "*Good Bye!*" to some one. Greeting people in this way displays a high amount of respect and is a polite way to greet religious people and officials.

Furthermore, it's not always appropriate to shake hands between the sexes, even though in the modern Indian society women are more outgoing, it is not the traditional Indian way. This is due to various religious and cultural reasons.

That may seem a bit confusing, but it will come naturally to you in no time. Indians are very warm and friendly people who will model to you the appropriate way to relate, so just be aware of what others are doing, and you'll be fine!



USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.7 Survival Phrases

Welcome back. I hope you've enjoyed the Hindi lessons so far! Grammar is indeed the back bone of any language and may not be very easy to digest. But if you practice it and try to put it into use whenever possible, you will be able to master any language - including Hindi! Today we're going to learn some essential phrases that will help with very basic conversations. We're also going to learn about words like "*mine, his, yours, ours"* that indicate possession. Why are they useful? Think about how often you refer to "*my hat*", or "*our house*", even "*your country*". You'll definitely be needing them!

Survival Phrases

Now that you've mastered greetings in Hindi, you'll be able to make a great first impression with Indian people you meet.
What you'll be learning today is how to talk about the experience of learning Hindi and how to get people to help you in this endeavor. You may even be advised Hindi is a hard language to learn and understand. "Hindi is difficult, is it not? *hindī muśakila hai, hai nā?*" You can answer in any way depending on how you really feel about learning Hindi. Try one of the following:

हिन्दी मुशकिल है, है ना?
hindī muśakila hai, hai nā?
Hindi is difficult, isn't it?

नही,हिन्दी सीखना आसान हैं
nahī,hindī sīkhanā āsāna haĩ
No, learning Hindi is easy

उतना मुशकिल नही
utanā muśakila nahī
Not that much difficult

हाँ, हिन्दी बहुत मुशकिल है ।
hā̃, hindī bahuta muśakila hai
Yes, Hindi is very difficult.

नहीं, हिन्दी सीखना आसान है
nahī̃,hindī sīkhanā āsāna hai
No, learning Hindi is easy

उतना मुश्किल नहीं है
utanā muśakila nahī̃ hai
It is not so difficult

Any Indian is likely to be impressed, and more than happy to help you with your Hindi. Once you start conversing, they may say:

āpa acchī hindī bōlatē haĩ..	You speak Hindi very well.

And this is a well deserved compliment for you, isn't it?

If you don't think you speak Hindi very well, or if you want to make sure that the person doesn't assume that you know more than you do, you can use one of these useful phrases:

मैं पढ रहा हूँ
maĩ paḍha rahā hū̃
I am reading (male)

मैं पढ रही हूँ
maĩ paḍha rahī hū̃
I am reading (female)

मुझे थोडी सी हिन्दी मालूम हैं

mujhē thōḍī sī hindī mālūma haĩ
I only know a little Hindi

मुझे उतना मालूम नहीं हैं
mujhē utanā mālūma nahī̃ haĩ
I don’t know much

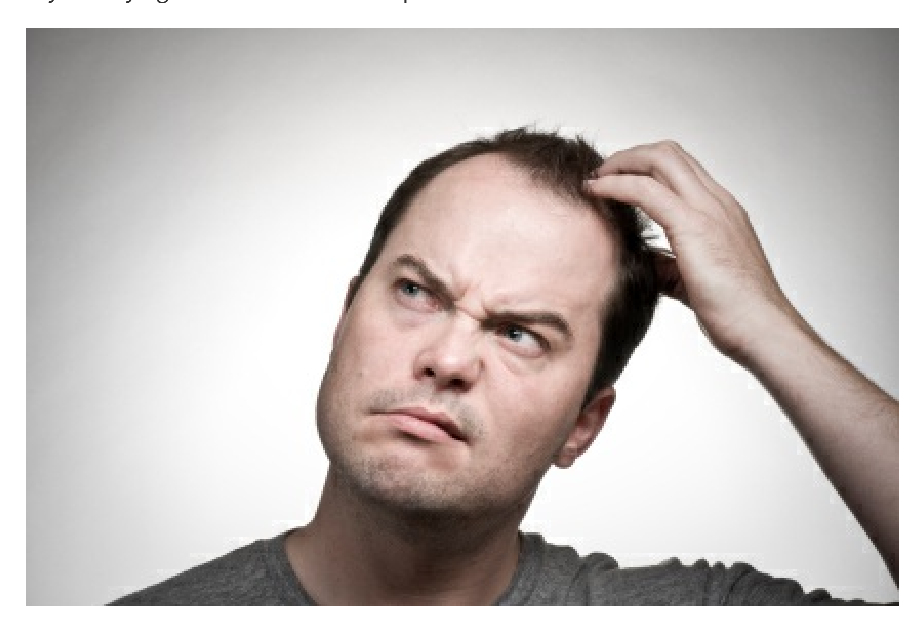
मैं अंग्रेज़ी बेहतर बोल सकता हूँ
maĩ angrēzī behatar bōla sakatā hū̃
I speak English better (male)

मैं अंग्रेज़ी बेहतर बोल सकती हूँ
maĩ angrēzī behatar bōla sakatī hū̃
I speak English better (female)

मैं हिंदी सिख रहा हूँ
maĩ hindī sikha rahā hū̃
I am learning Hindi (male)

मैं हिंदी सिख रही हूँ
maĩ hindī sikha rahī hū̃
I am learning Hindi (female)

If, on the other hand, your conversation partner doesn't tell you that you speak Hindi very well - in fact, you may find that you simply can't understand what they are saying - here are a few useful phrases to have on hand.



मैं समझा नहीं
maĩ samajhā nahī̃
I don’t understand (male)

मैं समझी नहीं
maĩ samajhī nahī̃
I don’t understand (female)

माफ़ कीजिए
māfa kījiē
Pardon me

मैं ज़्यादा हिन्दी नहीं बोलता
maĩ zẏādā hindī nahī̃ bōlatā
I don’t speak much Hindi (male)

मैं ज़्यादा हिन्दी नहीं बोलती
maĩ zẏādā hindī nahī̃ bōlatī
I don’t speak much Hindi (female)

क्या़ आप अंग्रेज़ी बोल सकते हैं ?
kẏā āpa angrēzī bōla sakatē haĩ ?
Do you speak English? (male)

क्या़ आप अंग्रेज़ी बोल सकती हैं ?
kẏā āpa angrēzī bōla sakatī haĩ ?
Do you speak English? (female)

मैं ज़्यादा हिंदी नहीं बोलती हूँ
maĩ zyādā hindī nahī̃ bōlatī hū̃
I don't speak much Hindi (female)

मैं ज़्यादा हिंदी नहीं बोलता हूँ
maĩ zyādā hindī nahī̃ bōlatā hū̃
I don't speak much Hindi (male)

क्या आपको अंग्रेजी आती है?
kyā āpakō angrēzī ātī hai?
Do you know English? (male or female)

फिर से बोलिए
fira sē bōliē
Please say it again

धीरे से बोलिए
dhīrē sē bōliē
Please speak slowly

You'll notice from these lists – and I'm sure you already know from the previous lessons – that Hindi is a gender specific language. In other words, the language often adjusts according to who is speaking, a male or a female, and who is being spoken to. We've given you both the male and the female way to say these phrases. Without getting into complicated grammatical explanations, you'll see some basic patterns emerging for converting a male sentence into one said by a woman. Be sure to learn, and practice, both the male and the female forms of the phrases we're teaching you. You will only need to say one form concerning yourself, but you'll also need to understand when someone of the opposite gender says the same thing in a different way.

Who Owns This?

Now we're going to take a look at words called possessive pronouns. These are words like mine, ours, his, hers... they're exceptionally useful. First, check out the list of possessive suffixes and try to learn them. After that we can try to use them in various situations.

मेरा /मेरी /मेरे
mērā /mērī /mērē (depending on the gender and number of the object)
Mine

आप का /आप की/ आप के
āpa kā /āpa kī/ āpa kē (depending on the gender and number of the object)
Yours

उसका /उसकी /उसके
usakā /usakī /usakē
His (far away)

उसका /उसकी /उसके
usakā /usakī /usakē
Her (far away)

उनका /उनकी /उनके
unakā /unakī /unakē
Their (far away)

हमारा/ हमारी/ हमारे
hamārā/ hamārī/ hamārē

Our

इसका/इसकी/इसके
iskā/ iskī/ iskē
His/Her/It (close by)

इनका/इनकी/इनके
inkā/ inkī/ inkē
Their (close by)

Here, in Hindi we need to use different possessive suffixes depending on the object we are talking about. For example, if you want to say, “My book” in Hindi it could be in two ways depending on the Hindi word you use for book.



As you can see above there are three different ways to say each possessive pronoun. This is because Hindi is a gendered language. This means that all words have a gender. Look at the words for brother and sister below.

पुस्तक
pustaka
Book (feminine)

किताब
kitāba
Book (feminine)

भाई
bhāi
Brother (masculine)

बहन
bahan
Sister (feminine)

Then, to say "my book"

मेरी पुस्तक
mērī pustaka
My Book (book is feminine)

मेरी किताब
mērī kitāba
My Book (book is feminine)

Now to say "my brother" or "my sister" we have to make our pronoun agree with our word. To say "my brother" we would have to use the masculine ending of "my" which is "*mērā*". Likewise to say "my sister" we would choose the feminine ending, "*mērī* ".

मेरा भाई
mērā bhāī
My Brother

मेरी बहन
mērī bahana
My sister

This pattern is the same across all possessive pronouns. To make the pronoun agree with a masculine word we would choose an "*ā*" ending, for example:

- mērā, āpa kā, usakā, unakā, hamārā

To make the pronoun agree with a feminine word we would an an "ī" ending.

- mērī , āpa kī, usakī, unakī, hamārī

Similarly we have to change the word depending on the number of objects as well.

Let’s try to understand this feature with a simple example.

लड़का
laḍakā
Boy

लड़के
laḍakē
Boys

लडकी
laḍakī
Girl

लडकियाँ
laḍakiyā̃
Girls

मेरा लड़का
mērā laḍakā
My Boy

मेरे लड़के
mērē laḍakē
My Boys

हमारा लड़का
hamārā laḍakā
Our Boy

हमारे लड़के
hamārē laḍakē
Our Boys

हमारी लडकी
hamārī laḍakī
Our Girl

हमारी लडकियाँ
hamārī laḍakiyā̃

Our Girls

Did you notice that when the object is feminine, the possessive suffix remains the same irrespective of the number?

Culture: Trades in India

In the past, India was a main trade exchange attraction for all foreign monopolies. The Dutch, Portuguese, French, and English had all targeted India for its rich and varied treasures like spices, materials and precious stones. This trade based invasion started even before the Europeans, the Mughals and other Muslim invaders had literally robbed India of its wealth.



These invasions are historical of course, and these days Indians are very friendly with foreigners. Tourism plays a vital role in today's Indian economy and you may find a few people who are eager to make money out of tourists - beware of such people! But don't worry, they represent the minority, the majority of people are genuinely interested in your wellbeing and want to show the best of their country to you.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.8 Being Polite

Remember how your mom always taught you to use 'please' and 'thank you'? Well today's lesson is all about saying those very words in Hindi. Please and thank you are universally appreciated, and taking the time to learn and use them correctly will really make a difference to how people receive you in India. As well as learning some manners, we're going to learn how to count up to one thousand, and beyond. Numbers feature in all sorts of daily actions - buying things, catching taxis, ordering tickets, asking the time...

After today's lesson, you'll have the basics covered very well!

Mind Your Manners!

"*Please*" and "*thank you*" are two expressions that you probably think you've already learned from the previous audio lessons. You have learned them… but wait, there's more! It's nothing really complex, just different ways of expressing the same sentiment.

But it's good stuff to know because you'll definitely encounter at least some of these words and Indians will be so impressed if you use them yourself. We'll look at the word for "*please*" before we move on to "*thank you*".

Please

You may face situations where you are required to offer something or request something. In English you can use the word "please" in both occasions, i.e., when requesting something or offering something. In Hindi, even though "*kṛpayā*" means please, I don't find it a good way of expressing the whole message with just one word. As you know, each language has it's own special expressions!



So, the table below will help you to learn more about the ways of offering and requesting.

One of the biggest ways in which you will interact with people in India is through making requests. Whether it is asking for a bottle of water or inviting your new friends to come to your home, requests are one of the main features of communication. It is important to learn to do this politely. Although "*kṛpayā*" means please, it is only really used in official documents and signs on government buildings. Most people do not use use it in regular conversation. Instead you can make requests in varying degrees of politeness. This means that rather than saying please directly you imply it.

That's Interesting!

As it is common to not say the word please, many Hindi speakers also leave this word out in English. It's easy to misunderstand this as rudeness but the real reason is they are not used to a language where "please" must be said!

āpa and tum

Remember our two ways of saying you in Hindi? We're going to revisit them to form some requests. First off lets remind ourselves of the differences between them.

- *āpa* is the politest form of 'you' in Hindi. It should be used when addressing all strangers and people who you wish to show respect to.
- *tum* is a more familiar way of saying 'you'. It should be used when speaking with friends or talking to children.

Nice and simple! Now, lets look some requests using bothāpa and tum. See if you can figure out the rule for making a polite and a familiar request.

आप बैठिए
āpa baiṭhiē
Please have a seat

तुम बैठो
tuma baiṭhō
Have a seat

आप खाइए
āpa khāiē
Please eat

तुम खाओ
tuma khāō
Eat!

आप कृपया बताइए
āpa kṛpayā batāiē
Please tell

तुम बताओ
tuma batāō
Tell

Did you notice how the endings change depending on if *āpa* or *tuma* is used? All polite requests using *āpa* end in *"-iē"* whereas all familiar requests end with *"-o"*. We will focus on polite requests however it is important so you can understand what people are saying to you. Lets look at some more examples of polite requests.

पानी दीजिये
pānī dījiē
Please give (me) water

आप अंदर आइए
āpa andara āiē
Please come inside

मेरे साथ आइए
mere sāth āiē
Please come with me

श्री शंकर से मिलिए
sri shankar se miliē
Please meet Mr Shankar

कुछ खाना खाइए
kuchh khānā khāiē
Please eat some food

यह लीजिए
yaha lījiē
Please take this

Please note!

It is common for Hindi speakers to miss out pronouns when making requests. Make sure you pay close attention to the ending of the words to prevent any misunderstanding!

आप कृपया लीजिए
āpa kṛpayā lījiē
Please have (m/f)

आप कृपया बैठिए
āpa kṛpayā baiṭhiē
Please have a seat (m/f)

आप कृपया खाइए

āpa kṛpayā khāiē
Please have food (m/f)

आप अन्दर आइए
āpa andara āiē
Please come inside (m/f)

आप कृपया दीजिए
āpa kṛpayā dījiē
Please give (m/f)

आप कृपया बताइए
āpa kṛpayā batāiē
Please tell (m/f)

आप कृपया दिखाइए
āpa kṛpayā dikhāiē
Please show (m/f)

Using these expressions even without the word "*krupaya*" (*kTRpayaa*) will not sound rude, because in Hindi adding "*iyae*" (*ie*) after the verb itself shows utmost respect.

Thank You

Now that you know how to say "please", it's time to complete your education in polite speech by teaching you the different ways to say "thank you" and the replies you may hear.

The first, and most common one, you already know – "*dhanyavāda".* The word "*śukriyā*" is derived from Persian and is common in Urdu speaking regions. As "*dhanyavāda*" is related to Sanskrit it is seen as a more formal language. But neither of them are wrong and both are fairly common.

In reply to a "*dhanyavāda*", you can expect "*kōī bāta nahī̃*", which means "that's alright". Or someone may even say "*kisa liē*", meaning "what for?" So you can use the same expressions in reply to the "*dhanyavāda*" or "*śukriyā*" that you receive! Easy, isn't it?

To express the degree of your gratitude, you can use the following expression:

बहुत धन्यवाद
bahuta dhanyavāda
Thank you very much

But you can always use "*śukriyā*" whenever you want to say "thank you" and it does the job!

Make a special effort to say please and thank you, you will be surprised how people warm to you!

शुक्रिया
śukriyā
Thank you!

कोई बात नहीं
kōī bāta nahī̃
It's nothing!

किस लिए?
kisa liē?
What for?

Culture: A Taste of India



Throughout North India, you will find “dhabas” or 'road side food stalls'. To be perfectly honest, the food served in these tiny shops is unbeatable in taste! The chefs are very experienced and normally local, therefore they produce the most exquisite regional dishes. A foreigner may doubt the hygiene of these places. Plenty of tourists eat from dhabas with no problems, whilst others contract food poisoning from fancy restaurants... it's a bit of a gamble really, but from my personal experience I would recommend the dhaba food at least once during your Indian tour!

Usually there will be some coir-made cots to sit on and eat, especially in Rajasthani dhabas. The Punjabi dhabas are famous for channa (chickpea curry) and hot pooris. The mere thought makes my mouth water!

Usually foreign tourists are treated very well by the staff at dhabas. They are generally situated on road sides, and so are easily accessible by anyone traveling by road. Often you'll have the chance to meet local people and learn about their lifestyle - these experiences are priceless for a traveler. Don’t miss an opportunity to eat from a dhaba!



India is famous for its rich food culture. As mentioned in the above section, you can have the “Taste of India” from the road side or you can choose a luxury meal in a starred restaurant. The star hotels in big Indian cities are targeting tourists from all over the world and multinational companies. You can enjoy the hospitality of trained staff and enjoy a wide range of food. You can expect Punjabi, Kerala, Gujrathi, or even Chinese food in a restaurant in India. The price could be really high compared to that in a dhaba, but the ambience is also very good.

If you're fond of seafood, head for the coast. India's beach restaurants are famous for their divine seafood dishes.

If you're looking for a cultural experience with locals, then starred restaurants are not for you. The higher price keeps local people away.

Multi-national chain restaurants like McDonalds or KFC or even Pizza Hut can be found in some of the bigger cities in India. These restaurants are often the favourite hang-outs of upper-class Indian students. Don't forget though, that for every chain restaurant that opens, several local businesses probably close. Wherever possible, try to support local enterprise, the community will thank you for it!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.9 I Like

Q. How do you say "I don't know" or "I don't like"?

A. We have to use what we call the 'negative form' of a sentence. It's important to be able to express the negative for many reasons, most commonly it'll be when you want to express dissatisfaction, or that you don't know something.

What better setting for expressing these phrases than a restaurant! Not saying that you'll have trouble in Indian restaurants, but it's one of those settings where phrases like "I don't like fish" or "I don't know what to order" are pretty common. So today, whilst learning how to express phrases in the negative, you'll also get a taste for Indian menu items. And trust me, it will be a very tasty experience!

Ready? Okay, here we go...

It's time to go a little deeper and start learning how to express some simple likes and dislikes. One of the most common way we make friends in any language is by sharing our interests. In this section you'll learn how to say if you like something and how to say if something is not for you. Before we do this however we'll have to look at some grammar. Don't worry though! It will only be short and it will open a whole new world of expression in Hindi.

We're going to imagine we are in a restaurant in Delhi for this. Delhi is famous for it's top class eateries and mouth watering street food so we'll have a look at some common menu items as well.

It Pleases Me!

In English in the way we express opinions in general begins with yourself. For example: I like tennis, I enjoy it. However in Hindi this is done the other way round. So the above examples turn into tennis is pleasing to me, it was enjoyable to me.

मुझे टेनिस पसंद है
mujhē tennis pasanda hai
I like tennis (lit. tennis is pleasing to me)

मुझे अच्छा लगता है
mujhē acchā lagatā
I like it (lit. it struck me as good)

Now you may have noticed there is something odd about the sentences above, and there is! Look at the literal translations and you will see that in both examples something is happening "*to me*". As we learnt in one of our last lessons the Hindi word for is "*ko*".

maĩ + ko = mujhko

This is turn often gets shortened to "*mujhē*" although both are correct.We call this the oblique case. Lets look at some more examples of how we would change pronouns in this case.

मुझको / मुझे
mujhko / mujhē
To me

आपको
āpako
To you

उसको
usko
To him/to her/to it

उनको

unko
To them

हमको
hamko
To us

Great! Now lets see how these work in action.

Pasanda and lagatā: Expressing enjoyment

Well done on getting through the grammar, now lets use it! There are two main ways that we can expressenjoyment in Hindi.

- Pasanda: meaning "pleases"
- Lagatā: meaning "strikes"

The main difference between these two is that lagatā tends to have a more diverse use. For example, withPasanda we can only really say we like something. However with lagatā we can say that something "strikes" us as good, interesting, tasty and many many other things. Lets look at a few examples.

मुझे चाय पसंद है
mujhē chāya pasanda hai
I like tea

मुझे अच्छा लगता है
mujhē acchā lagtā hai
I like it

मुझे नाटक पसंद है
mujhē nātaka pasanda hai
I like the theater

मुझे दिलचस्प लगता है
mujhē dilchaspa lagtā hai
I think it is interesting

मुझे चना पसंद है
mujhē chanā pasanda hai
I like chickpeas

मुझे स्वादिष्ट लगता है
mujhē svadishta lagtā hai
I think it is delicious

मुझे क्रिकेट पसंद है
mujhē krikēta pasanda hai
I like cricket

मुझे मनोरंजक लगता है
mujhē manoranjaka lagtā hai
I think it is entertaining

Now you can express what you like and why you like it in Hindi! Look at the examples above and try to think of some of your own examples using the words we have just learnt.

Expressing Negatives

Have you noticed while conversing with Indians in Hindi; they use "*nahī̃*" to express a negative meaning? The word "*nahī̃*" is very important as you will see in the following examples.

मुझे पसन्द नहीं है
mujhē pasanda nahī̃ hai

I don’t like

मै ने कुछ भी नहीं सुना
mai nē kucha bhī nahī sunā
I didn't hear anything

मुझे नहीं पता
mujhē nahī̃ patā
I don’t know

मै झूठ नहीं बोलता / बोलती
mai jhūṭha nahī bōlatā / bōlatī
I am not lying / I don't lie

मैं ने कुछ भी नहीं पिय़ा
maĩ nē kucha bhī nahī̃ piẏā
I haven’t drunk anything

मुझे पढ़ना अच्छा नहीं लगता
mujhē paṛhanā acchā nahī lagatā
I don't like reading

मुझे पढ़ाई करना अच्छा नहीं लगता
mujhē paṛhāī karanā acchā nahī lagatā
I don't like studying

मैं ने कुछ भी नहीं खाया
maĩ nē kucha bhī nahī̃ khāyā
I haven’t eaten anything

मैं ने नहीं देखा /देखी
maĩ nē nahī̃ dēkhā /dēkhī (depending on the gender of the object)
I didn’t see

मैं समझा / समझी नहीं
maĩ samajhā / samajhī nahī̃
I didn’t understand(male/ female)

मैं ने बात नहीं की
maĩ nē bāta nahī̃ kī
I didn’t speak



"maĩ nē nahī̃ dēkhā"

"I didn't see"



"maĩ nē bāta nahī̃ kī"
"I didn't speak"

By adding “nahī̃ ” you can express a negative meaning. Even if you don’t use the full grammatical sentence, but you have the root

verb and “nahī̃ ” the listener will make out the meaning.

How did you go pronouncing those words? It can be quite a mouthful at first, but once you get used to it you might even find it fun expressing negatives. You’ll come across more of these negatives throughout the rest of this course, and now that you know how to make any verb into a negative, you can practice with every new verb you learn.

Eating at an Indian Restaurant

There are Indian restaurants in all of the major cities of the world! So you might have some idea about the menu or you may even have a favorite Indian dish already!

In India, food is a celebration! Recipes and food culture vary between regions. When you travel in India you will see Punjabi, Rajasthani, Gujrathy or South Indian restaurants; each of these serving regional specialities. Apart from their authentic dishes, most restaurants serve continental dishes too. The majority of restaurants, excepting five star luxury ones, are priced quite reasonably. Food is guaranteed to be a highlight of your trip...



The chart below will help you to pronounce the names of some popular Indian dishes. It is also a good idea to know the ingredients, so you're not ordering blind!

रोटी	**rōṭī**	*This is the staple food of North Indians. Made of whole wheat flour and cooked over a pan without oil.*
चावल	**cāvala**	*Cooked rice. You may find a variety of white, red, boiled and unboiled rice. Each tastes different.*
नान	**nāna**	*Similar to roti, but made of plain flour and cooked in a tandoor. You will find a variety of naan like butter naan, garlic naan etc.*
कोरमा	**kōramā**	*A spicy curry. It can be vegetable korma, chicken korma or mutton korma.*
दाल	**dāla**	*Gravy made with yellow grams and seasoned with cumin seeds, red chillies onions and garlic. Rice and daal is a very common and healthy combination.*
लस्सी	**lassī**	*This drink is very good on hot summer days! Made with curd, sugar and salt. Sometimes you*

		will find mango lassee, which is made by adding mango pulp to the normal lassee.
विन्दालू	**vindālū**	*A spicy dish. Can be chicken or lamb with cumin, garlic, onion, mustard , turmeric , cinnamon, cloves, pepper, ginger and paprika.*
गुलाब जामुन	**gulāba jāmuna**	*A sweet made with fried plain flour balls and sugar syrup with a cardamom flavour.*
खीर	**khīra**	*A sweet with milk, rice/semolina and sugar. Roasted cashew nuts and raisins are used for decoration.*
इडली और साम्बार	**iḍalī aura sāmbāra**	*This is the common breakfast of a South Indian. So, if you happen to go to a South Indian restaurant for breakfast, try this item. Idlis are made out of fermented rice and black gram batter. Sambar is a tasty blend of yellow lentils, vegetables and spices*

How do you feel after going through the sample menu? Hungry?! This is not even the full collection of meals you'd expect to see on a real menu, they're just the most common dishes.

If you like the sound of any of them, try to practice pronouncing them correctly. Your waiter will be ever so impressed!

Culture: Hospitality



Indians are known for their hospitality. According to Hindu Philosophy, a guest must be treated as an equal to God, so they do try to make a guest's stay with them as comfortable as possible!

You may feel a little embarrassed, or perhaps find it unnecessary when the host asks you about your well being each and every time you meet. It's just part of the culture though. If you do your best to reassure your host that you're having a great time, you might find they relax a little.

If you happen to make some Indian friends, it is quite likely that you'll be invited to their home for lunch or dinner! Inviting someone home for food shows the intimacy of a relationship. Indians generally enjoy having guests at their place. Some families still follow the tradition of offering free food to at least one outsider every day.

If you are taken to a restaurant by your Indian friend, don't get surprised if your host pays the whole bill! This is customary in India, although recently there is a change in trend when students and youngsters 'go Dutch' or share the cost of a meal.

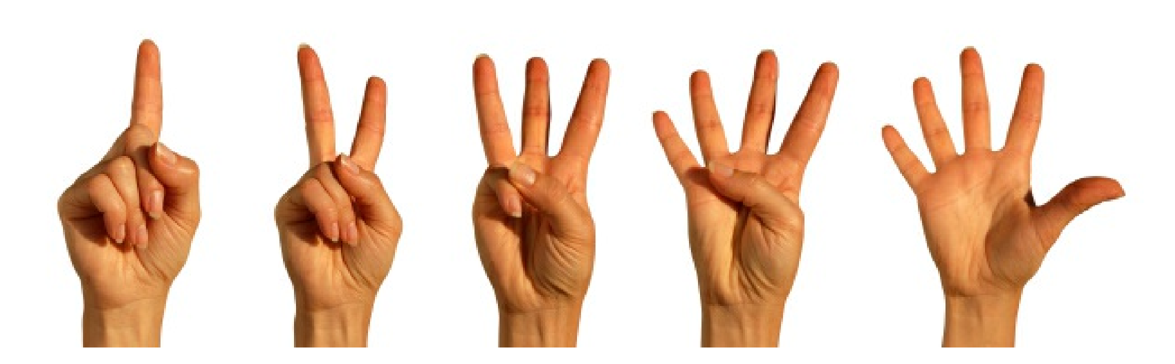
USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.11 Numbers - 1 to 10

In this lesson, you're going to start to tackle some of this wonderful Hindi script. We'll start at the easiest point – numbers, and then work our way through to the alphabet. You may remember in the first Audio Course, counting from one to six at the beginning of the lesson just to get your attention.

Numbers

Today you're going to learn the numbers one through to ten; how to say them as well as how to recognise them in written form. So grab a paper and pen for your own practice, and work your way through the list below.



एक
ēka
1

दो
dō
2

तीन
tīna
3

चार
cāra
4

पाँच
pā̃ca
5

छह
chaha
6

सात
sāta
7

आठ
āṭha
8

नौ
nau

9

दस
dasa
10

How did you go? Can you count to ten without looking at the list above? Can you recognise the written numbers out of order?

Try writing the numbers in Hindi on separate pieces of paper and then make random selections to test yourself. You'll be surprised how quickly you learn.

Until then,

namastē**!**

नमस्ते

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.12 Numbers - 11 to 19

Today we will continue where we left off last time, writing the Hindi numbers. Hopefully the last lesson left you feeling pretty confident with the first ten numbers? Now we're moving on up, starting from eleven...

Numbers

Ready? Here we go!



ग्यारह
gyāraha
Eleven

बारह
bāraha
Twelve

तेरह
tēraha
Thirteen

चौदह
caudaha
Fourteen

पन्द्रह
pandraha
Fifteen

सोलह
sōlaha
Sixteen

सत्रह
satraha
Seventeen

अठारह
aṭhāraha
Eighteen

उन्नीस
unnīsa
Nineteen

You may find that there is hardly any resemblance between the first ten numbers and the new set. But that's alright! You can practice and learn the numbers quickly, can't you?

Next time we will learn how to make bigger numbers in the last of our 'writing numbers' lessons.

Just the Beginning

I hope you have had a happy start to your Hindi education- but remember that this is just the beginning! There's so much more to learn about Hindi language and culture. And with Rocket Hindi you'll learn Hindi with an innovative, comprehensive learning package based on how people actually say things in everyday contexts.

I'll leave you with those words, which are designed to entice you and excite you about the prospect of getting your conversational Hindi into high gear!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

1.13 Numbers - Multiples of 10

It's time for the third and last lesson on writing Hindi numbers. Today we'll give you the framework, and let you fill in the details. Think of this lesson as one more chance for you to practice your basic numbers. You can never have too much practice!

Numbers

First of all, you'll see (and hear) the multiples of ten up to ninety.

दस
dasa
Ten

बीस
bīsa
Twenty

तीस
tīsa
Thirty

चालीस
cālīsa
Forty

पचास
pacāsa
Fifty

साठ
sāṭha
Sixty

सत्तर
sattara
Seventy

अस्सी
assī
Eighty

नब्बे
nabbē
Ninety

सौ
sau
One hundred

दो सौ
dō sau
Two hundred

तीन सौ
tīna sau
Three hundred

चार सौ
cāra sau
Four hundred

पाँच सौ
pā̃ca sau
Five hundred

छह सौ
chaha sau
Six hundred

सात सौ
sāta sau
Seven hundred

आठ सौ
āṭha sau
Eight hundred

नौ सौ
nau sau
Nine hundred

हज़ार
hazāra
One thousand

दस लाख
dasa lākha
One Million

To make multiples of thousands, you can use the unit numbers and add "thousand" after that. Sounds easy, doesn’t it? That's because it is!

Unfortunately, there are no repeating patterns to learn numbers like 21, 31 or 41 as each of them is different. They're just something you'll learn with time.

Until next time...

Phira milēṅgē
See you again!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.1 Tourist Information

Navigating our way through the streets of India, in this lesson we'll cover how to ask for what you want at tourism destinations. You'll be speaking so well that you might even receive a suggestion or two on what activities are available. Consider it an insider's scoop!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

कृपया अगला आगे आइए!
kṛpayā agalā āgē āyẽ!
Next, please!

Nikita

हम्म्म्...क्या राष्ट्रीय संग्रहालय यहाँ नज़्दीक में है?
hammmm...kyā rāṣṭrīya sangrahālaya yahā̃ nazdīka mẽ hai?
Um, is the National Museum museum close to here?

Rohan

हाँ, लेकिन वह आज बन्द है ।
hā̃, lēkina vaha āja banda hai .
Yes, but it's closed today.

Nikita

अरे नहीं, कितने दुःख की बात है!
arē nahī̃, kitanē duḥkha kī bāta hai!
Oh no, what a shame!

Rohan

लेकिन शहर का भ्रमण कर सकती हैं । / लेकिन शहर की यात्रा कर सकती हैं ।
lēkina śahara kā bhramaṇa kara sakatī haĩ. / lēkina śahara kī yātrā kara sakatī haĩ .
But there is a sightseeing tour

Nikita

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Wonderful!

Rohan

सभी लुभावनी जगहें देखी जा सकती हैं ।
sabhi lubhāvanī jagahein dēkhī jā sakatī haĩ
All pleasant sights can be seen.

Nikita

यह अच्छा प्रतीक है । इसकी कीमत क्या है?
yaha acchā pratīka hai. isakī kīmata kyā hai?
That sounds great. How much is it?

Rohan

एक सौ पचास रुपए प्रति व्यक्ति ।
ēka sau pacāsa rupaiyē prati vyakti .
Rs 150 per person

Nikita

कृपया , मुझे दो टिकेट दीजिये ।
kṛpayā , mujhē dō ṭikēṭa dījiyē .
I'd like two tickets, please

Rohan

यह लीजिये , यात्रा आनन्दमयी हो!!
yaha lījiyē , yātrā ānandamayī hō!!
Here you go. Enjoy the tour!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

होटेल मयूर में स्वागत हैं
hōṭēla mayūra mẽ svāgata haĩ
Welcome to the Hotel Mayur!

एक कमरे का एक रात का किराया कितना है ?
ēka kamarē kā ēka rāta kā kirāyā kitanā hai ?
How much is it for a room per night?

कितने लोगों के लिए ?
kitanē lōgõ kē liē ?
For how many people?

दो लोगों के लिए
dō lōgõ kē liē
For two.

उसकी कीमत आठ सौ रुपए हैं
usakī kīmata āṭha sau rupaē haĩ
That costs Rs 800.

क्या हम्हें निजी स्नानघर मिलेगा?
kyā hamhẽ nijī snānaghara milēgā?
Do we have our own bathroom?

यहाँ हर कमरे के साथ अलग स्नानघर है
yahā̃ hara kamarē kē sātha alaga snānaghara hai
All rooms have their own bathroom.

नाश्ता कितने का है ?
nāśtā kitanē kā hai ?
How much does the breakfast cost?

यह कीमत नाश्ता सहित है
yaha kīmata nāśtā sahita hai
The price is including breakfast

क्या आप तैयार हैं?
kyā āpa taiyāra haĩ?
Are you ready?

कृपया अगला !!
kṛpayā agalā !
Next please.

क्या पुलीसे स्टेशन यहाँ नज़दीक में है ?

kyā pulīsē sṭēśana yahā̃ nazadīka mē̃ hai ?
Is the police station close to here ?

क्या बस स्टोप यहाँ से नज़दीक है ?
kyā basa sṭōpa yahā̃ sē nazadīka hai ?
Is the bus stop close to here ?

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Well done!

वह खुला है
vaha khulā hai
It is open.

दुकान खुली है
dukāna khulī hai
The shop is open

शहर की यात्रा
śahara kī yātrā
City tour / Trip around the city

मैं यात्रा पे जा रहा हूँ |
maĩ yātrā pē jā rahā hū̃ |
I'm going on a trip.

मैं यात्रा पे जाना चाहता हूँ |
maĩ yātrā pē jānā cāhatā hū̃ |
I want to go on a trip.

मैं करता हूँ |
maĩ karatā hū̃ |
I do

मैं बनाता हूँ |
maĩ banātā hū̃ |
I make

उस की कीमत कितनी है ?
usa kī kīmata kitanī hai ?
How much does that cost ?

शाबाश!!
śābāśa!
Well done!

आप ने ओपेरा का आनंद लिया ?
āpa nē ōpērā kā ānanda liyā ?
Did you enjoy the opera?

आप ने यात्रा का आनंद लिया ?
āpa nē yātrā kā ānanda liyā ?
Did you enjoy the trip around the city?

मैं मौसम का आनंद ले रहा हूँ |
maĩ mausama kā ānanda lē rahā hū̃ |
I'm enjoying the weather.

क्या तुम बीथोवन के संगीत का आनंद लेते हो?
kyā tuma bīthōvana kē sangīta kā ānanda lētē hō?
Do you enjoy Beethoven's music?

क्या आप यात्रा का आनंद ले रहे हैं ?
kyā āpa yātrā kā ānanda lē rahē haĩ ?
Are you enjoying the tour?

क्या सौना का आनंद ले रहे हैं?
kyā saunā kā ānanda lē rahē haĩ?
Are you enjoying the sauna?

यह अच्छा प्रतीक है |
yaha acchā pratīka hai |
This is a good sign.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.2 On a Tour

It's a new experience but never fear, you've got excellent guides in Nikita and Rohan! They'll be there to help you manage your way in and around the India Gate. Plus you'll learn the essential phrase: Are there toilets?

Conversation Transcript

Nikita

क्या यहाँ अंग्रेज़ी बोलनेवाला पथप्रदर्शक है?
kyā yahā̃ angrēzī bōlanēvālā pathapradarśaka hai?
Is there an English speaking guide?

Rohan

मुझे नहीं लगता । लेकिन मैं सब समझता हूँ ।
mujhē nahī̃ lagatā . lēkina maĩ saba samajhatā hū̃ .
I don’t think so, but I understand everything.

Nikita

मैं भी । मज़ा आयेगा ।
maĩ bhī . mazā āyēgā .
Me too. It’s good fun.

Rohan

मुझे उम्मीद है हम जल्दी रुकेंगे ।
mujhē ummīda hai hama jaldī rukēngē .
I hope we stop soon.

मुझे जाना है ।
mujhē jānā hai .
I need to go to the bathroom.

Nikita

अभाग्यवश नहीं
abhāgyavaśa nahī̃
Unfortunately not.

Rohan

ओह...
ōha...
Oh…

Nikita

लेकिन हम इन्डिया गेट पर रुकेंगे ।
lēkina hama inḍiyā gēṭa para rukēngē .
But we’ll have a break at the India Gate

Rohan

अभी और कितनी दूर है?
abhī aura kitanī dūra hai?
How long yet?

Nikita

नहीं पता!

nahī̃ patā!
No idea!

Rohan

क्या यहाँ कोई शौचालय है?
kyā yahā̃ kōī śaucālaya hai?
Are there any toilets?

Nikita

अवश्य ।
avaśya
For sure.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

क्या सब ठीक हैं?
kyā saba ṭhīka haĩ?
Everything okay ?

कृपया अगला !!
kṛpayā agalā !!
Next, please!

म्म्म... क्या राष्ट्रीय संग्रहालय यहाँ नज़्दीक में है?
mmma... kyā rāṣtrīya sangrahālaya yahā̃ nazdīka mē̃ hai?
Um, is the National Museum museum close to here?

हाँ, लेकिन वह आज बन्द है ।
hā̃, lēkina vaha āja banda hai .
Yes, but it's closed today.

अरे नहीं, कितने दुःख की बात है !
arē nahī̃, kitanē duḥkha kī bāta hai !
Oh no, what a shame!

लेकिन शहर का भ्रमण कर सकते हैं |
lēkina śahara kā bhramaṇa kara sakatē haĩ |
But there is a sightseeing tour

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Wonderful!

सब लुभावनी जगह देखी जा सकती हैं |
saba lubhāvanī jagaha dēkhī jā sakatī haĩ |
You will see all the sights.

यह अच्छा प्रतीक है | इसकी कीमत क्या है?
yaha acchā pratīka hai | isakī kīmata kyā hai?
That sounds great. How much is it?

एक सौ पच्चास रुपए प्रति व्यक्ति
ēka sau paccāsa rupaē prati vyakti
Rs 150 per person

कृपया, मुझे दो टिकट दीजिए

kṛpayā, mujhē dō ṭikaṭa cāhiē
Give me two tickets please.

ये लीजिए, यात्रा आनंदमयी हो !
yē lījiē, yātrā ānandamayī hō !
Here you go. Enjoy the tour!

क्या कोई पथप्रदर्शक है?
kyā kōī pathapradarśaka hai?
Is there a guide?

क्या दुकान खुली है?
kyā dukāna khulī hai?
Is the shop open?

क्या बस जल्दी जा / निकल रही है?
kyā basa jaldī jā / nikala rahī hai?
Is the bus leaving soon?

क्या यह पाठ काफ़ी कठिन है?
kyā yaha pāṭha kāfī kaṭhina hai?
Is this lesson too hard?

मुझे (ऐसा) लगता है
mujhē (aisā) lagatā hai
I think (this is) so

रोहन, मुझे कोफ़ी चाहिए ।
rōhana, mujhē kōfī cāhiē .
Rohan, I need coffee.

यात्रा में मज़ा आएगी
yātrā mẽ mazā āēgī
The tour will be fun.

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Well done!

तुम रुको
tuma rukō
You stop.

क्या तुम रुक रहे हो?
kyā tuma ruka rahē hō?
Are you stopping?

मैं रुक गया
maĩ ruka gayā
I stopped.

हम वहाँ जल्दी रुकेंगे
hama vahā̃ jaldī rukēngē
We will be stopping there soon.

क्या हम कोफ़ी पीने के लिए जल्दी रुकेंगे ?
kyā hama kōfī pīnē kē liē jaldī rukēngē ?
Are we stopping soon to get coffee?

मुझे उम्मीद है तुम अंग्रेज़ी बोल सकते हो
mujhē ummīda hai tuma angrēzī bōla sakatē hō
I hope you speak English (informal).

मुझे उम्मीद है आप अंग्रेज़ी बोल सकते हैं
mujhē ummīda hai āpa angrēzī bōla sakatē haĩ
I hope you speak English (formal).

मुझे बस जाना है ।
mujhē basa jānā hai .
I must go.

अंतराल
antarāla
A pause / break

हम रुकेंगे / हम अंतराल लेंगे
hama rukēngē / hama antarāla lēngē
We will stop / We will take a break

मुझे अंतराल चाहिए / मैं रुकना चाहता हूँ
mujhē antarāla cāhiē / maĩ rukanā cāhatā hū̃
I want a break.

मैं अंतराल लेना चाहूँगा / मैं रुकना चाहूँगा
maĩ antarāla lēnā cāhū̃gā / maĩ rukanā cāhū̃gā
I would like a break.

होटेल कितनी दूर है?
hōṭēla kitanī dūra hai?
How far is the hotel?

यात्रा कितनी लम्बी है
yātrā kitanī lambī hai
How long is the tour?

कुल मिलके
kula milakē
In total

मैं यहाँ रुकूँगा
maĩ yahā̃ rukū̃gā
I will stop here.

अभाग्यवश हम २.२ के अंत पर आए हैं
abhāgyavaśa hama 2.2 kē anta para āē haĩ
Unfortunately, we've come to the end of Lesson 2.2

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.3 At the Airport

It's more than likely that a flight to India will end at an Indian airport! But there's no cause for concern; Nikita and Rohan have everything you need. Passport, luggage and all the Hindi words to talk about them. You'll even learn what to do in the event of missing your flight, something we hope you never have to face...

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

नमस्कार, कृपया पासपोर्ट और टिकेट दीजिये।
namaskāra, kr̥payā pāsapōrṭa aura ṭikēṭa dījiyē.
Greetings. Passport and ticket please.

Nikita

कृपया यह लीजिये ।
kr̥payā yaha lījiyē .
Please, here it is.

Rohan

तो...श्रीमती शर्मा... क्या ये आप का सामान हैं?
tō...śrīmatī śarmā... kyā yē āpa kā sāmāna haĩ?
Well… Mrs. Sharma… is that your suitcase?

Nikita

हाँ, यह नीला वाला सूटकेस मेरा है ।
hā̃, yaha nīlā vālā sūṭakēsa mērā hai
Yes, the blue suitcase is mine.

Rohan

क्या आप के सूटकेस में कुछ वर्जित सामान हैं?
kyā āpa kē sūṭakēsa mẽ kucha varjita sāmāna haĩ?
Have you got anything prohibited in your suitcase?

Nikita

नहीं और ना ही हान्डबाग में..
nahī̃ aura nā hī hānḍabāga mẽ
No, and nothing in my hand luggage either

Rohan

अरे , आप मुम्बै के लिये उडान करना चाहती थी!
arē , āpa mumbai kē liyē uḍāna karanā cāhatī thī!
Oh, you want to go to Mumbai.

हवाई जहाज़ पहले ही जा चुका है ।
havāī jahāza pahalē hī jā cukā hai .
The flight's already gone.

Nikita

यह सच नहीं हो सकता ।
yaha saca nahī̃ hō sakatā .
That can't be true

Rohan

परन्तु, बदकिसमती से आप काफ़ी देर से आईं ।
parantu, badakisamatī sē āpa kāfī dēra sē āyī̃ .
Oh yes. Unfortunately you are too late.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हि'दी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hi'dī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

क्या यहाँ अंग्रेज़ी बोलनेवाला पथप्रदर्शक है?
kyā yahā̃ angrēzī bōlanēvālā pathapradarśaka hai?
Is there an English speaking guide?

मुझे नहीं लगता । लेकिन मैं सब समझता हूँ ।
mujhē nahī̃ lagatā . lēkina maĩ saba samajhatā hū̃ .
I don't think so, but I understand everything.

मैं भी । मज़ा आएगी |
maĩ bhī . mazā āēgī |
Me too. It's good fun.

मुझे उम्मीद है हम जल्दी रुकेंगे । मुझे शौचालय जाना है ।
mujhē ummīda hai hama jaldī rukēngē . mujhē śaucālaya jānā hai .
I hope we stop soon. I need to go to the bathroom.

अभाग्यवश नहीं
abhāgyavaśa nahī̃
Unfortunately not.

लेकिन हम इन्दिया गेट पर रुकेंगे
lēkina hama indiyā gēṭa para rukēngē
But we'll have a break at the India Gate

अभी और कितनी दूर है?
abhī aura kitanī dūra hai?
How far yet?

नहीं पता
nahī̃ patā
No idea!

क्या यहाँ कोई शौचालय है?
kyā yahā̃ kōī śaucālaya hai?
Are there toilets?

अवश्य
avaśya
For sure.

सब ठीक ठाक
saba ṭhīka ṭhāka
All good?

कुमारी
kumārī
Young lady

मदाम
madāma

Madam (married / unmarried women)

श्रीमान
śrīmāna
Sir / Mister

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Well done

यह नीला स्वेटर
yaha nīlā svēṭara
This blue sweater

यह नीला वाला
yaha nīlā vālā
This blue one

वह मेरा सूटकेस है ।
vaha mērā sūṭakēsa hai .
That is my suitcase.

वह मेरा सामान है ।
vaha mērā sāmāna hai .
That is my luggage.

कुछ भी
kucha bhī
Anything

कहीं भी
kahī̃ bhī
Anywhere

कैसे भी
kaisē bhī
Anyhow

कभी भी
kabhī bhī
Anytime

कोई भी
kōī bhī
Anyone

कोई
kōī
Someone

क्या यहाँ कोई है?
kyā yahā̃ kōī hai?
Is there someone here?

क्या यहाँ कोई भी है?
kyā yahā̃ kōī bhī hai?
Is there anyone here?

यहाँ गाडी खडा करना वर्जित है ।
yahā̃ gāḍī khaṛā karanā varjita hai .
Parking prohibited here

धूम्रपान वर्जित है ।

dhūmrapāna varjita hai .
Smoking is prohibited

क्या यह वर्जित है ?
kyā yaha varjita hai ?
Is this forbidden?

यह सच है ।
yaha saca hai .
This is true.

क्या यह सच है ?
kyā yaha saca hai ?
Is this true?

यह बिना कीमत का नहीं हो सकता ।
yaha binā kīmata kā nahī̃ hō sakatā
This can’t be free of charge.

यह कानूनी नहीं हो सकता ।
yaha kānūnī nahī̃ hō sakatā .
This can’t be legal.

यह अच्छा नहीं हो सकता ।
yaha acchā nahī̃ hō sakatā
This can’t be good.

यह होटेल नहीं हो सकती ।
yaha hōṭēla nahī̃ hō sakatī .
This can’t be the hotel.

बहुत देर
bahuta dēra
Too late

कितनी देर हुई है ?
kitanī dēra huī hai ?
How late is it?

क्या वक्त हुआ है?
kyā vakta huā hai?
What time is it?

बहुत देर हो गई है ।
bahuta dēra hō gaī hai .
It is too late.

चुम्बन वर्जित है |
cumbana varjita hai
Kissing forbidden

सख्त वर्जित है |
sakhta varjita hai
Strictly forbidden

अलविदा
alavidā
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452

Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.4 Traveling on Business

Learn small talk with the locals as you shmooze your way into sharing a cab fare. After this lesson, you'll definitely be ready to get down to business!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिन्दी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

नमस्कार !
namaskāra
Greetings!

कृपया पासपोर्ट और टिकट दीजिए
kṛpayā pāsapōrṭa aura ṭikaṭa dījiē
Passport and ticket please.

कृपया यह लीजिए
kṛpayā yaha lījiē
Here you go

तो... श्रीमती शर्मा, क्या यह आप का सामान है ?
tō... śrīmatī śarmā, kyā yaha āpa kā sāmāna hai ?
Well… Mrs. Sharma…is that your suitcase?

हाँ, यह नीलावाला सूटकेस मेरा है ।
hā̃, yaha nīlāvālā sūṭakēsa mērā hai .
Yes, the blue suitcase is mine.

क्या आप के सूटकेस में कुछ वर्जित सामान हैं?
kyā āpa kē sūṭakēsa mē̃ kucha varjita sāmāna haĩ?
Have you got anything prohibited in your suitcase?

नहीं और ना ही हान्डबाग में ।
nahī̃ aura nā hī hānḍabāga mē̃ .
No, and nothing in my hand luggage either

अरे! आप मुंबई के लिए उडान करना चाहती थी । हवाई जहाज़ पहले ही जा चुका है ।
arē! āpa mumbai kē liē uḍāna karanā chāhatī thī. havāī jahāza paahalē hī jā chukā hai .
Oh, you want to go to Mumbai. The flight's already gone.

यह सच नहीं हो सकता ।
yaha saca nahī̃ hō sakatā
That can't be true

परंतु, बदकिसमती से आप काफ़ी देर से आई ।
parantu, badakisamatī sē āpa kāfī dēra sē āī .
Oh yes. Unfortunately you are too late.

क्या आप इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं?
kyā āpa intazāra kara rahē haĩ?
Are you waiting?

मैं इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ|
maĩ intazāra kara rahā hū̃ |
I'm waiting for...

आप किसका इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं?
āpa kisakā intazāra kara rahē haĩ?
For whom are you waiting?

सेंटर जाने के लिए टैक्सी का
sēṇṭara jānē kē liē taxi kā
For a taxi to the city center

क्या आप भी भ्रमण पे जाने का इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं?
kyā āp bhī bhramaṇa pē jānē kā intazār kar rahē haĩ?
Are you waiting for the tour as well?

क्या आप मेरा इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं?
kyā āpa mērā intazāra kara rahē haĩ?
Are you waiting for me?

मुझे सेमिनार में जाना है ।
mujhē sēmināra mẽ jānā hai .
I have to go to the seminar.

मुझे सम्मेलन कक्ष में जाना है ।
mujhē sammēlana kakṣa mẽ jānā hai .
I have to get to the conference room.

मुझे संग्रहालय जाना है ।
mujhē sangrahālaya jānā hai .
I have to go to the museum.

मुझे भोजनालय जाना है ।
mujhē bhōjanālaya jānā hai .
I have to go to the restaurant.

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Good job!

बहुत खूब !
bahuta khūba !
Excellent!

कार्य
kārya
Work / A job

मैं छुट्टियों पर हूँ.
maĩ chuṭṭiyõ para hũ.
I'm on vacation.

मैं यहाँ व्यापारी हूँ
maĩ yahā̃ vyāpārī hũ
I am a businessman.

मैं वास्तुकार हूँ
maĩ vāstukāra hũ
I'm an architect.

मैं कम्पयूटर प्रोग्रामर हूँ|
maĩ kampayūṭara prōgrāmara hũ |
I'm a computer programmer.

मैं प्रबन्धक हूँ
maĩ prabandhaka hũ
I'm a manager.

मैं गायक हूँ
maĩ gāyaka hū̃
I'm a singer.

आप यहाँ क्या कर रहे हैं?
āpa yahā̃ kyā kara rahē haĩ?
What are you doing here?

आप क्या बना रहे हैं?
āpa kyā banā rahē haĩ?
What are you making ?

माफ़ करना , मैं अभी कार्य कर रहा हूँ
māfa karanā , maĩ abhī kārya kara rahā hū̃
Sorry, I'm working at the moment.

बेरोज़गार
bērōzagāra
Job-less

क्या आप मेरे साथ चलना चाहेंगी
kyā āpa mērē sātha calanā cāhēngī
Would you like to come with me?

खुशी से
khuśī sē
For sure / Happily / I'd love to

सौभाग्य !
saubhāgya !
Good luck!

क्या आप उनका इंतज़ार कर रही हैं ?
kyā āpa unakā intazāra kara rahī haĩ ?
Are you waiting for him?

क्या आप यहाँ कारोबार केलिए आए हैं?
kyā āpa yahā̃ kārōbāra kēliē āē haĩ?
Are you here on business?

हम कार्य नहीं करते
hama kārya nahī̃ karatē
We don't work.

बस आ रही है
basa ā rahī hai
Here comes the bus.

जल्दी मिलते हैं
jaldi milatē haĩ
See you soon!

Conversation Transcript

Nikita

क्या आप भी सिटी सेन्टर जाने के लिये टाक्सी का इन्तज़ार कर रहे हैं?
kyā āpa bhī siṭī sēnṭara jānē kē liyē ṭāksī kā intazāra kara rahē haĩ?
Are you waiting for a taxi to the city center as well?

Rohan

हाँ,मुझे होटेल ताज जाना है।

hā̃,mujhē hōṭēla tāja jānā hai.

Yes, I have to go to the Taj Hotel.

Nikita

क्या आप यहाँ छुट्टियाँ बिताने आये हैं?

kyā āpa yahā̃ chuṭṭiyā̃ bitānē āyē haĩ?

Are you here on vacation?

Rohan

नहीं, मैं यहाँ कारोबार के लिये आया हूँ ।

nahī̃, maĩ yahā̃ kārōbāra kē liyē āyā hū̃ .

No. I'm here on business.

Nikita

अच्छा?

acchā?

Oh yes?

आप क्या काम करते हैं?

āpa kyā kāma karatē haĩ?

What do you do for a living?

Rohan

मैं एक डिसैनर हूँ।

maĩ ēka ḍisainara hū̃.

I'm a designer.

आप क्या करती हैं?

āpa kyā karatī haĩ?

What about you?

Nikita

मैं अभी काम नहीं करती ।

maĩ abhī kāma nahī̃ karatī

I'm not working at the moment.

Rohan

लो, एक टाक्सी आ गयी,

lō, ēka ṭāksī ā gayī,

Ah, here is a taxi.

क्या आप मेरे साथ चलना चाहेंगी?

kyā āpa mērē sātha calanā cāhēngī?

Do you want to share the ride?

Nikita

हाँ, खुशी से..

hā̃, khuśī sē.

Yes, I'd love to.

2.5 Directions

Hi and welcome back to another Rocket Hindi lesson! Today's lesson contains some priceless tips on very practical subjects.

You'll learn how to ask for directions, query the price of something, and we'll take a leap into the chaotic traffic of India and talk about crossing the road! I know what you're thinking, "I already know how to cross the road", but trust me - it's a whole new experience in India!

Where am I?

As a traveller there are few experiences more frustrating than being lost, and not knowing how to ask for help! With just a few simple phrases you can politely ask for directions, and after learning a couple of key words like "left, right, that way" you will be able to understand the directions you're given pretty easily.

So today's lesson will be about showing you how to ask directions and how to understand the answers you're likely to receive. Let's start with the questions.



रेलवे स्टेशन कहाँ है?
rēlavē sṭēśana kahā̃ hai?
Where is the railway station?

बस स्टेशन कहाँ है?
basa sṭēśana kahā̃ hai?
Where is the bus station?

म्यूज़ियम कहाँ है?
myūziyama kahā̃ hai?
Where is the museum?

यहाँ से म्यूज़ियम तक कैसे जाते है?
yahā̃ sē myūziyama taka kaisē jātē hai?
How do we get to the Museum from here?

यहाँ से दूर है?
yahā̃ sē dūra hai?
Is it far from here?

यहाँ से पास है?
yahā̃ sē pāsa hai?
Is it close to here?

Now that you've got the questions, you'd better prepare yourself for the answers. Indians often speak quite fast, and there could be different accents too! But if you're familiar with some of the key words, you'll probably understand the meaning. Apart from some of the well known streets down town, you're unlikely to be given directions using street names

आगे
āgē
Straight ahead

बाईं ओर
bāī̃ ōra
On the left

दाईं ओर
dāī̃ ōra
On the right

गली की शुरुआत में
galī kī śuruāta mē̃
Beginning of the street

गली के अंत में
galī kē anta mē̃
End of the street

अगले कोने में
agalē kōnē mē̃
At the next corner

के सामने
kē sāmanē
In front of

के पीछे
kē pīchē
Behind

सीधा चलो
sīdhā chalo
Go straight

Chalo Chalo!

चलो चलो!

When on the streets or stuck in traffic, there is one word you are bound to hear over and over again: chalo! This means "lets go" and it is used in all manner of situations. You might recognise that "o" ending from when we were talking about making requests and giving commands. Lets try to use all of the skills we have just learnt in a conversation. Look at the sentences carefully, we'll be putting together lots of things we have learnt so far and this is a great way to refresh your memory.

बताइए रेलवे स्टेशन कहाँ है?
batāiē rēlavē sṭēśana kahā̃ hai?
Tell me, where is the railway station?

रेलवे स्टेशन काफी दूर है

rēlavē sṭēśana kāfī dūra hai
The railway station is quite fair away

क्या मैं पेडल से जा सकता हूँ?
kyā maĩ pēdala sē jā saktā hun?
Can I walk there?

रिक्शा से जाना बेहतर है
rikshā sē jānā bēhatara hai
It is better to go by rickshaw

रेलवे स्टेशन मार्किट के पास है
rēlavē sṭēśana mārkita kē pāsa hai
The railway station is next to the market

मार्किट से सीधा चलो
mārkita sē sīdhā chalo
Go straight from the market

बाईं और एक गली है
bāĩ ōra ēk galī hai
On the left hand side there is a street

रेलवे स्टेशन गली के अंत में है
rēlavē sṭēśana galī kē anta mẽ hai
The railway station is at the end of the street

Show me the Money!

Another essential skill set you need in your language toolbox is phrases related to money and bargaining. Bargaining in itself is quite an art, one that requires a bit of practice and some humor!

You need to know such phrases so that you can request the price, and counter-offer, like a local. The Indian currency is officially called "*rupees*", but is more commonly referred to as*rupaya*. Here are some common expressions related to asking the price.



यह कितने का है?
yaha kitanē kā hai?
How much does this cost?

तीन रुपये
tīna rupayē
Three Rupees

डेढ़ रुपये
ḍēṛha rupayē
One and a half Rupees

चार और एक चौथाई रुपये
cāra aura ēka cauthāī rupayē
Four Rupees and twenty five paise (Literally: 4 and one quarter Rupees)

यह महंगा है
yaha mahangā hai
That's expensive

मैं देता / देती हूँ
maĩ dētā / dētī hū̃
I'll give you (male / female)

मुझे नहीं चाहिए
mujhē nahī̃ cāhiē
I don't want it

मुझे पसंद है
mujhē pasanda hai
I like it

मुझे नहीं पसंद है
mujhē nahī̃ pasanda hai
I don't like it

मैं लेता / लेती हूँ
maĩ lētā / lētī hū̃
I'll take it (male female)

यह सस्ता है
yaha sastā hai
This is cheap

Culture: Organised Chaos!

For many visitors to an Indian city, one of their first and most enduring memories of the city is the way traffic operates. Millions of cars, trucks and buses vie for space on the overcrowded streets. To an outside observer, it's a system without order; lanes, and even traffic lights, are treated as though they don't exist, indicators are used sparingly while horns are used in excess. Indian drivers are used to this and are able to skillfully weave their way through this chaos!





The Railway system in India is a very wide network connecting East, West, South and North. The first passenger train chugged away in 1854, under the British rule. Now, almost every small town in India has a Railway station and passengers can book tickets very easily, even using the internet! These days, trains are much cheaper compared to buses and other road forms of transport in India, it's so cheap that people rely on trains for daily commuting.

This extensive rail network makes travel between deserts, snowy mountains, beautiful beaches and lush green meadows a breeze! You must travel by train at least for once while you are in India, it truly is an experience.



The North-East Indian city of Kolkata claims the pride of being the first Indian city with underground metro railway system. It extends from Dum-Dum near Netaji Subhas Chandra Bose airport, Kolkata to Tollygunj, the busy north south axis of Kolkata over a length of 16.45 kilometres. There are seventeen stations en route, situated about one kilometer apart.

In Delhi, the Capital City of India, there is a metro system which connects different parts of the city. It is called the "Life Line" of the city. The Metro has helped to reduce traffic congestion, although you wouldn't really know by taking a look at the streets! The Delhi metro is equipped with modern facilities and is still being expanded to connect all the major parts of the Indian Capital.

Mumbai, the financial capital of India situated in the West coast, also has a very good train system. The suburban electric trains connect the city very well. The inner city bus transport is also very efficient and convenient. The South Indian metro in Chennai (formerly Madras) also has a local railway system connecting Chennai central to prominent points within the city.

These train and metro services tend to be exceptionally crowded during the day, so try your best to avoid rush hours: 7am to 9am, 3pm to 6pm. Many trains have one or two compartments reserved exclusively for women! So if you are a single female traveler you could travel in such compartment with a bit more comfort.



All cities also have a myriad of transport options for making quick trips: buses, taxis and auto rikshaws are some of those options. Rickshaws provide a hair-raising experience for foreigners! Just remember to keep all limbs tucked inside the rickshaw, and you'll be fine!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.6 Telling the Time

Hi there, good to see you again! Today's Rocket Hindi lesson is on another super practical topic: telling the time. As a traveller you need to be competent at reading times, otherwise simple activities like checking a bus or train timetable become a nightmare!

Today we'll be learning how to express simple time readings like "quarter to..." and "half past..." We'll also quickly cover the cardinal numbers - 1st, 2nd, 3rd and so on.

What time is it?

In India there is only one time zone from East to West and from South to North, and there is no daylight time adjustment in winter; so already that's two less things to worry about!



It's always useful to learn how to ask for the time when you're in a foreign country. Particularly if you're not in the habit of using a wrist watch, this knowledge will really be very handy.

Here's how to ask for the time in Hindi: “samaya kyā hai*?*” “what time is it?”

समय क्या है?
samaya kyā hai?
What time is it?

कितने बजे?
kitanē bajē?
At what time?
The phrase “kitanē bajē?” can be used to say “at what time?”, when you want to meet some body.

Now both of these questions could have a multitude of answers and we’re not going to be able to list every possible one here, instead we’ll teach you the framework and the commonly used terms.

It's exactly 11am
If you’re asked for the time on the hour, your answer will be easy. Just add the normal name of the number before “bajē”. For example, “Tīna bajē” “three o’clock”. You can use this format to express any time! So easy!

It's 11:30
Each hour is further split, as in English, into halves and quarters

ग्यारह बजे
gyāraha bajē
Eleven o'clock

ठीक ग्यारह बजे
ṭhīka gyāraha bajē
Exactly eleven o'clock

डेढ बजे
Dē-ḍh bajē
Half past one

ढाई बजे
ḍhāī bajē
Half past two

साढ़े तीन बजे
sādhē tīn bajē
Half past three

साढ़े चार बजे
sāṛhē cāra bajē
Half past four

साढ़े पाँच बजे
sāṛhē pā̃ca bajē
Half past five

You might have noticed that except for "half past one" and "half past two", the phrase "*saaDe*" is prefixed to the normal o'clock expression.

Now, let's see how we can express "quarter past..."

सवा एक बजे
savā ēka bajē
Quarter past one

सवा दो बजे
savā dō bajē
Quarter past two

सवा तीन बजे
savā tīna bajē
Quarter past three

सवा चार बजे
savā cāra bajē
Quarter past four

सवा पाँच बजे
savā pā̃ca bajē
Quarter past five

The phrase "savā " is prefixed to the numbers to express "quarter past".

And, finally here's how we say "quarter to ..."

The word "paunē" is prefixed to the numbers to express "quarter to "

पौने एक बजे
paunē ēk bajē
Quarter to one

पौने दो बजे
paunē dō bajē
Quarter to two

पौने तीन बजे
paunē tīna bajē
Quarter to three

पौने चार बजे
paunē chār bajē
Quarter to four

पौने पाँच बजे
paunē pā̃nch bajē
Quarter to five

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal Numbers

If you don’t know what “ordinal” means, don’t worry. As soon as I say “first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth” you know what I’m talking about. These are the numbers that we’re going to learn in Hindi now. As in English, the ordinal numbers are just slight variations of the normal numbers, so even if you don’t remember them all you’ll likely recognize the number when it’s used. The only catch is that there are masculine and feminine variations to be used depending on the gender of the subject.

पहला /पहली
pahalā /pahalī
First (m/f)

दूसरा / दूसरी
dūsarā / dūsarī
Second (m/f)

तीसरा / तीसरी
tīsarā / tīsarī
Third (m/f)

चौथा / चौथी
cauthā / cauthī
Fourth (m/f)

पांचवां / पांचवीं
pāñcavā̃ / pāñcavī̃
Fifth (m/f)

छठा / छठीं
chaṭhā / chaṭhī̃
Sixth (m/f)

सातवाँ / सातवीं
sātavā̃ / sātavī̃
Seventh (m/f)

आठवाँ / आठवीं
āṭhavā̃ / āṭhavī̃
Eighth (m/f)

नौवाँ / नौवीं
nauvā̃ / nauvī̃
Ninth (m/f)

दसवाँ / दसवीं
dasavā̃ / dasavī̃
Tenth (m/f)

You may have noticed that most of the masculine ordinal numbers end with “ā̃ ” sound and the corresponding feminine ordinal numbers with “ī̃” sound. This is an easy way to memorise the ordinal numbers.

Great work. Now lets put all of our knowledge on telling the time to some practical use in a conversation. Here we have a man attempting to buy a train ticket from Delhi to Agra.

नमस्ते, मुझे एक टिकट आगरा तक दीजिए
namastē, mujhē ēk tikata āgarā taka dījiē
Hello, Please give me a ticket for Agra

पहली ट्रैन कब जाती है?
pahalī traina kaba jātī hai?
When does the first train train go?

पहली ट्रैन सवा नौ बजे जाती है
pahalī traina savā nau bajē jātī hai
The first train goes at quarter past nine

मैं बारह बजे जाना चाहता हूँ
maĩ bāraha bajē jānā chāhatā hū̃
I want to do at 12 o 'clock

तीसरी ट्रैन डेढ़ बजे जाती है
tīsrī traina dē-ḍh bajē jātī hai
The third train goes at half past 1

कोई ट्रैन बारह बजे नहीं जाती है?
kōī traina bāraha bajē nahı̃ jātī hai?
Is there no train that goes at 12?

ठीक है मुझे उस ट्रैन के लिए एक टिकट दीजिए
ṭhı̃ka hai mujhē usa traina ke liē ēk tickata dījiē
OK please give me a ticket for that train

Culture: Traditional Costume



India is a secular country, meaning people can live according to their own belief. No faith is imposed upon people by the Government. The majority of Indians are Hindus. There are Christians, Muslims, Buddhists, Sikhs, Followers of Jaina, and many other religious and cultural groups in India. It's probably fair to say that no other country in the world would have such a wide range of cultures and beliefs living as a society. This variation translates into different customs, language and ways of dressing between regions.

North Indian men normally wear “*Kurtha- Pyjama*” and women wear “*Saree*” or “*Churidhar*”. The young generation, on the other hand, are very trendy and are fond of western outfits. In south India, men wear “*Dhothee*” and shirt; women “*Saree*” or “*Churidhaar*”. The “*Churidhaar*”, originally from Punjab has now become the “national outfit” of women of all ages in India.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.7 Explaining Where

Welcome! Today's grammar lesson is designed to equip you with giving directions. That's right, you already know how to ask for them, and now you're going to learn how to give them! To give any kind of instructions, we use little words called postpositions. They're just words like "on, up, above, behind..." Small and easy, but VERY useful!

In our culture section we'll be looking at different types of vehicles in India (and the different kinds of mayhem they cause!)

Where?

When someone asks you where something is, how do you explain it? The grammatical answer is that you explain using "postpositions of place". You may not recognize this grammatical term, but you will definitely know the words themselves. They are descriptive words such as "under", "behind" and "next to". These words are essential for explaining, or understanding someone else's explanation of where things are.

Listed below are some of the most commonly used postpositions of place in Hindi script with their English translation, phonetic translation and audio example.

When someone asks you where something is, how do you explain it? In English we use prepositions to place words in sentences. We call them this because they come before the object we are relating them to. For example: UNDER the table, ON the chair, IN the cupboard. In Hindi however we call them postpositions because (you guessed it!) they come AFTER the word they are relating to. So if we were to do a literal translation of the above sentences they would say the table UNDER, the chair ON and the cupboard IN. This might take a while to get used to so we will look at lots of examples of sentences. Postpositions are essential for explaining or understanding where things are.

Listed below are some of the most commonly used postpositions in Hindi. Some of them we have already come across!

पर
para
On

नीचे
nīcē
Under

ऊपर
ūpara
Above

के साथ
kē sātha
With

में
mẽ
In

के सामने
kē sāmanē
In front of

पीछे
pīchē
Behind

बगल में
bagala mẽ
Next to

के बीच
kē bīca
Between

को
kō
to/for

पर
para
On

में
mẽ
In

से
sē
From

के साथ
kē sātha
With

के ऊपर
kē ūpara
Above

के नीचे
kē nīcē
Under

के सामने
kē sāmanē
In front of

के पीछे
kē pīchē
Behind

के पीछे
kē pīchē
Behind

के बगल में
kē bagala mẽ
Next to

के बीच में
kē bīca mẽ
In between

के पहले
kē pahalē
Before

के बाद
kē bāda
After

These words will be really easy for you to practice at home! Whenever you would normally use an english preposition of place in a sentence, just swap it for a Hindi one. In no time you'll have them memorized!

Using Postpositions in Sentences

It wouldn't be very useful to learn all these words without learning how to use them in sentences! As we said at the beginning of the lesson, postpositions come after the thing they are describing. They also however slightly change some words. All words ending with ā get changed to ē when they have a postposition after them. For example:

लड़का	*ladk**a***	boy
लड़के के साथ	*ladkē ke sāth*	With the boy

So far so good. But I thought *ladkē* meant boys! That means we have to have a special way to signify plurals when they have a postposition after them.

लड़के	*lad**ē***	boys
लड़कों के साथ	*ladk**on** ke sāth*	*with the boys*

So when we attach postpositions to a plural word then change the last letter to ***on.*** Now lets look at some sentences with postpositions in them so we can see this in action.

Note that if the word ends with a consonant it will not change when a postposition is added after it.

मैं लड़कियों के साथ हूँ
maĩ ladkiyōn kē sātha hū̃
I am with the girls

मेरे कमरे के बगल में है
mērē kamarē kē bagala mē hai
It is next to my room

किताबों के निचे है
kitābōn kē nicē hai
It is under the books

मुझको दीजिये
mujhkō dījiē
Please give it to me

मेरा गाओं दिल्ली और आगरा के बिच में है
mē rā gāon dillī aura āgrā kē bicha mē hai
My village is between Delhi and Agra

उस मेज़ पर रखिए
usa mēza para rakhiē
Please leave it on the table

ताज महल आगरा में है
tāja mahala āgrā mē hai
The Taj Mahal is in Agra

Culture: Nice Wheels!



In almost every city in India, you will find taxis, auto rickshaws and buses. I hope you know what an auto rickshaw is? Well, I'll explain. An auto rickshaw (also called "fut-fut" in some Northern Indian States) is a three wheeled vehicle and could be the cheapest vehicle possible to hire for short distance travel. There are taxis and buses too, though buses are typically very crowded and uncomfortable. Long distance bus services are usually alright as they provide advance booking and seat allocation facilities.

If you want to travel in an auto rickshaw, you can go to the rickshaw stand where they take it in turns to give passengers a ride, or if you are lucky you can just catch one that's returning after a 'delivery'. These days, almost all of the major railway stations have pre-paid rickshaw and taxi services which work along with traffic police. This system is useful for passengers as they will not be ripped off by the drivers. So whenever you want to hire any vehicle, first check if there is a pre-paid system available in that area. Otherwise, get into a vehicle only after fixing the rate and do ask the driver to turn on the meter (if there is one!). Many drivers refuse to use the meter as they have fixed rates to each area. Please do not insist to use the meters, instead negotiate the rate before you start the journey. It's good to get a rough idea about the rates to different areas before you start your trips. Ask the hotel where you're staying about the approximate cost, sometimes they will even arrange reasonable and reliable transport for you.



The taxis are well equipped with music systems and air conditioners. They might charge you more if you want to put the air conditioning on, but it's better to use the air conditioning to protect yourself from the dust which you're probably not used to! Here too, you can negotiate the rate before starting the journey. Once you reach your destination, just pay the amount you have agreed to pay, say "*Shukriya*" and walk away! The driver may expect something more from you because you are a supposedly wealthy tourist! Just ignore such nonsense!

It's possible that you'll meet a nice taxi driver who is reasonable and very helpful. In such cases you can take his mobile number and arrange your trips with him. Some drivers may even take you to shops or emporiums so that they get commission on your purchases. Just beware that in these situations the price will always be higher (as it includes commission) and that it's easy to fall into a situation where you feel pressured to buy. Be firm, and don't let people take advantage of you!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.8 Five W’s and One H

Hi and welcome to another Rocket Hindi lesson. Today you'll be learning an essential and well-used skill among language learners: how to ask questions! When you travel in India, you'll find yourself overcome with curiosity about all sorts of things, so armed with the right vocabulary, you'll soon be able to gain the answers from local people 'in the know'. Later we'll be looking at how India's daily business relies on cash exchange.

Forming Questions - 5 W's and H

I don't know about you, but when I learned about asking questions in junior school, I was taught that what, where, why, when, who and how are the most important ones to know. They allow you to quickly inform yourself of what's happening around you, and I consider them even more important for the language learner, whose understanding of the surroundings is much less. So, let’s have a look at them.



कौन
kauna
Who

क्या
kyā
What

कहाँ
kahā̃
Where

कब
kaba
When

क्यों
kyō̃
Why

कैसे
kaisē
How

कितने
kitanē
How much

कितने रुपए
kitanē rupaē
How much money

This, That & Those

"yaha, vaha" and *"vē"* are the Hindi words that directly correspond to the English words “this”, “that” and “those”. These words can be used for both feminine and masculine genders.

यह
yaha
This

वह
vaha
That

ये
yē
These

वे
vē
Those

Some example questions

वह कौन है?
vaha kauna hai?
Who’s that?(male/female)

यह क्या है?
yaha kyā hai?
What’s this?

वह कहाँ है?
vaha kahā̃ hai?
Where is that?

यह कितने रुपये हैं?
yaha kitanē rupayē haĩ?
How much money is this?

Yes or No?

Sometimes when we ask a question, we only really need "yes" or "no" as an answer. In Hindi we do this by changing the word order a little bit. Look at these two sentences:

यह क्या है?
yaha kyā hai?
What is this?

क्या यह है
kyā yaha hai?
Is this it?

As you can see from the above examples, to ask a yes or no question we have to move *'kyā*" to the very beginning. As a rule, all questions beginning with kyā can be answered with yes (*ji han*) or no (*ji nahin*).

क्या आप अमेरिका से हैं?
kyā āpa amērikā sē haĩ?
Are you from America?

जी हाँ, मैं अमेरिका से हूँ
jī hā̃ , maĩ amērikā sē hū̃
Yes, I am from America

क्या आपको केला पसंद है?
kyā āpakō kēlā pasanda hai?
Do you like banana?

जी नहीं, मुझे केला नहीं पसंद है
jī nahĩ , mujhē kēlā nahĩ pasanda hai
No, I do not like banana

क्या बस स्टेशन यहाँ से दूर है?
kyā basa steśana yahā̃ sē dura hai?
Is the bus station far from here?

जी नहीं, बस स्टेशन यहाँ से पास है
jī nahĩ, basa steśana yahā̃ sē pāsa hai
No, the bus station is near to here

Culture: Cash Society

India is predominantly a cash society. Outside of large shopping malls, electronic payment options are scarce. It's a good idea to always carry some Indian currency with you. ATMs are available in almost every village in India, but people are just getting used to electronic payment systems and most small and medium sized shops still don't accept bank cards.

You may have noticed that Indians always carry money with them. Just the way we all carry bank cards and credit cards. The average Indian makes sure that they have all the small denominations of currencies with them. This is because some places like busy ticket counters and buses always demand exact change. If you have only a 500 Rupee note with you, it's a good idea to break this into small denominations and carry it with you. This process is very important when you travel in a taxi as there is no electronic payment system in Indian taxis, and the driver will simply refuse to give you change - thus keeping the entire amount!



USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.8 Five W's and One H

Hi and welcome to another Rocket Hindi lesson. Today you'll be learning an essential and well-used skill among language learners: how to ask questions! When you travel in India, you'll find yourself overcome with curiosity about all sorts of things, so armed with the right vocabulary, you'll soon be able to gain the answers from local people 'in the know'. Later we'll be looking at how India's daily business relies on cash exchange.

Forming Questions - 5 W's and H

I don't know about you, but when I learned about asking questions in junior school, I was taught that what, where, why, when, who and how are the most important ones to know. They allow you to quickly inform yourself of what's happening around you, and I consider them even more important for the language learner, whose understanding of the surroundings is much less. So, let's have a look at them.



कौन
kauna
Who

क्या
kyā
What

कहाँ
kahā̃
Where

कब
kaba
When

क्यों
kyō̃
Why

कैसे
kaisē
How

कितने
kitanē
How much

कितने रुपए
kitanē rupaē
How much money

This, That & Those

"yaha, vaha" and *"vē"* are the Hindi words that directly correspond to the English words “this”, “that” and “those”. These words can be used for both feminine and masculine genders.

यह
yaha
This

वह
vaha
That

ये
yē
These

वे
vē
Those

Some example questions

वह कौन है?
vaha kauna hai?
Who’s that?(male/female)

यह क्या है?
yaha kyā hai?
What’s this?

वह कहाँ है?
vaha kahā̃ hai?
Where is that?

यह कितने रुपये हैं?
yaha kitanē rupayē haĩ?
How much money is this?

Yes or No?

Sometimes when we ask a question, we only really need "yes" or "no" as an answer. In Hindi we do this by changing the word order a little bit. Look at these two sentences:

यह क्या है?
yaha kyā hai?
What is this?

क्या यह है
kyā yaha hai?
Is this it?

As you can see from the above examples, to ask a yes or no question we have to move *'kyā*" to the very beginning. As a rule, all questions beginning with kyā can be answered with yes (*ji han*) or no (*ji nahin*).

क्या आप अमेरिका से हैं?
kyā āpa amērikā sē haĩ?
Are you from America?

जी हाँ, मैं अमेरिका से हूँ
jī hā̃ , maĩ amērikā sē hū̃
Yes, I am from America

क्या आपको केला पसंद है?
kyā āpakō kēlā pasanda hai?
Do you like banana?

जी नहीं, मुझे केला नहीं पसंद है
jī nahĩ , mujhē kēlā nahĩ pasanda hai
No, I do not like banana

क्या बस स्टेशन यहाँ से दूर है?
kyā basa steśana yahā̃ sē dura hai?
Is the bus station far from here?

जी नहीं, बस स्टेशन यहाँ से पास है
jī nahĩ, basa steśana yahā̃ sē pāsa hai
No, the bus station is near to here

Culture: Cash Society

India is predominantly a cash society. Outside of large shopping malls, electronic payment options are scarce. It's a good idea to always carry some Indian currency with you. ATMs are available in almost every village in India, but people are just getting used to electronic payment systems and most small and medium sized shops still don't accept bank cards.

You may have noticed that Indians always carry money with them. Just the way we all carry bank cards and credit cards. The average Indian makes sure that they have all the small denominations of currencies with them. This is because some places like busy ticket counters and buses always demand exact change. If you have only a 500 Rupee note with you, it's a good idea to break this into small denominations and carry it with you. This process is very important when you travel in a taxi as there is no electronic payment system in Indian taxis, and the driver will simply refuse to give you change - thus keeping the entire amount!



USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

2.9 Expressing "I can"

I Can...

In this unit we're going to learn all about how to say if we are able to do something. We use these types of constructions all the time in English and often we choose the wrong one! So the first thing we'll be doing when we look at each one is learning when to use them and what the difference is between each phrase.

We'll also be learning about the Indian obsession with film.

There are three different ways of expressing ability in Hindi.

1. I can do it
2. I manage to do it
3. I have already done it

Now lets look at each of these in depth.

To be able to

The first thing we're going to look at is how to say "I can" in Hindi. The use of the word "can" is one of the most notoriously misused in English! How many times have you heard someone say "can I go to..." rather than "may I go to..."?

The phrase "I can" is used to suggest the ability to do something but (and this is the important part) not the intention to do it.

We express this in Hindi with the help of only one other verb:

सकना
sakanā
To be able to

To use this in a sentence we have to attach it to the verb we want to say we can do. Let's try to to say the phrase "I can speak Hindi". The other verb we need to use is **बोलना** ***bolanā*** meaning **to speak**. So to put these two verbs together we have to follow this formula:

Verb Stem + *sakanā* + auxiliary verb

So if we wanted to say I can speak Hindi it would be:

मैं हिन्दी बोल सकता हुँ*main Hindi bola sakatā hun* (masculine)

or

मैं हिन्दी बोल सकती हुँ*main Hindi bola sakati hun*(feminine)

Lets look at some more examples of this in action.

मैं टेनिस खेल सकता हूँ
maĩ tēnisa khēla sakatā hū̃
I can play tennis

हो सकता है
hō sakatā hai
It could be (it is possible)

मैं आपको सिखा सकती हूँ

maĩ āpakō sikhā sakatī hū̃
I can teach you

मैं ऐसा नहीं कर सकता हूँ
maĩ ēsā nahı̃ kara sakatā hū̃
I cannot do that

आप गिटार बजा सकते हैं
āpa gitāra bajā sakatē haĩ
You can play guitar

To manage to

In Hindi there is a distinct difference between expressing an ability and suggesting that you will do it.

The phrase "To manage to" differs from "I can" in that there is an intention to do the action. It is also used to describe anomalies. For example lets focus on the sentence "I can not sleep". In Hindi we would use the construction for "manage to" rather than "can" as everyone CAN sleep, but in one particular instance we might not be able to.

The word we use to express this is:

पाना
pānā
To manage to

We form the sentence using *pānā* we follow the exact same formula as we did with *sakanā*.

Verb Stem + *pānā* + auxiliary verb

So to construct the sentence "I am able to sleep" is would be:

मैं सो पाता हुँ *main so pātā hun* (masculine)

मैं सो पाती हुँ *main so pāti hun* (feminine)

And to say I am not able to sleep it would be:

मैं **नहीं** सो पाता हुँ *main nahin so pātā hun* (masculine)

मैं **नहीं** सो पाती हुँ *main nahin so pāti hun* (feminine)

Great work. Now lets see some more examples of how we can use this in everyday life.

मैं आ नहीं पाती हूँ
maĩ ā nahı̃ pātī hū̃
I am not able to come

मैं नहीं समझ पाता
maĩ nahı̃ samajha pātī
I'm not able to understand

मैं उसको नहीं सुन पाती
maĩ usako nahı̃ suna pātī hū̃
I cannot hear him/her

आप मेरे साथ जा पाते हैं
āpa mērē sātha jā pātē haĩ
You can come with me

वह साडी ख़रीद पाती है

vaha sāṛī kharīda pātī hai
She is able to buy a Sari

To have already done

The last construction we are going to learn today is also handily the easiest! The hard work is all behind you, phew! We are going to learn how to say that you have already done something in Hindi. Just like in the other two phrases we have learnt today, we do this with the use of an additional verb.

चुकना
chukanā
To have already done

Once again we put this into exactly the same formula to connect it with other verbs:

Verb Stem + chukanā + auxiliary verb

Let's use the phrase "I have already seen the Taj Mahal" to illustrate this. If we put this into the above formula is comes out like this.

मैं ताज महल देख चुका हुँ*main T**ā**ja Mahala dekha chuk**ā** **hun***

मैं ताज महल देख चुकी हुँ *main T**ā**ja Mahala dekha chuki hun***

Easy! Now lets look at some more examples.

मैं भारत में आ चूका हूँ
maĩ bhārata mē ā chukā hū̃
I have already come to India

क्या आप खा चुके हैं?
kyā āpa khā chukē haĩ ?
Have you eaten already?

मैं जयपुर जा चुकी हूँ
maĩ jayapura jā chukī hū̃
I have already gone to Jaipur

वह फिल्म देख चूका है
vaha filma dēkh chukā hai
He has already seen the film

यह मेरा सामान ले चूका है
yaha mēra sāmāna lē chukā hai
He has already taken my luggage

Culture: Filmistan!

The lights, the glamour, all the action: it's got to be Bollywood! Watching films is a national obsession in India and Bollywood has the largest audience in the world. Shah Rukh Khan, one of the biggest actors in Bollywood today) is widely estimated to be the most famous actor in the world. As well as Bollywood India has a huge variety of regional cinema including Tamil films (Kollywood), Telugu films (Tollywood) and Malayalam films (Mollywood).

Most of the big blockbusters are "masala" films. This means that they are a mix of several different genres and will have some action, romance, comedy and drama. In recent years however there has been a growing trend towards more socially-motivated films. The actor Amir Khan has been leading this charge with films focusing on a diverse range of topics from the treatment of children with dyslexia in school to the popular marketing of spirituality.

Going to the cinema in India is an experience not to be missed. Nowadays there are many air conditioned cinemas in malls but it is

worth going to a more old fashioned cinema if you have the time. People queue for hours for tickets to the "first day first show" of a new film and dancing in the aisles is heartily encouraged!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.1 On the Freeway

Things speed up as we take a turn onto the Raajpath, the Hindi freeway. Let Nikita and Rohan navigate your course through the Hindi language. So buckle up, it's time to get in the driver's seat.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

अरे, देखिये!
arē, dēkhiyē!
Hey, look!

Nikita

क्या?
kyā?
What?

Rohan

वह नानो यकीनन एक सौ किलोमीटर से ज्यादा तेज़ चल रही है ।
vaha nānō yakīnana ēka sau kilōmīṭara sē jyādā tēza cala rahī hai .
The Nano is going at over 100 kilometers an hour.

Nikita

हाँ, मैं उसे देख रही हूँ! वह तेज़ है
hā̃, maĩ usē dēkha rahī hū̃! vaha tēza hai
Yeah, I can see it. That's fast.

Rohan

क्या मैं उसे पकडने की कोशिश करूँ?
kyā maĩ usē pakaḍanē kī kōśiśa karū̃?
Shall I try to catch up to it?

Nikita

मुझे नहीं लगता कि हमारी किराये की गाडी इतनी तेज़ जा पायेगी।
mujhē nahī̃ lagatā ki hamārī kirāyē kī gāḍī itanī tēza jā pāyēgī.
I don't think our rental car can go that fast..

Rohan

हाँ, कितनी बकवास है !
hā̃, kitanī bakavāsa hai !
What a bummer.

Nikita

हम्हें वैसे भी अगले मार्ग से बाहर निकलना है ।
hamhẽ vaisē bhī agalē mārga sē bāhara nikalanā hai .
We'll have to take the next exit anyway.

Rohan

और फिर ?
aura phira ?
And then?

Extra Vocabulary

svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Swaagath hain aaj ke rocket hindi ke paath mein
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

नमस्कार , कैसे चल रहा है?
namaskāra , kaisē cala rahā hai?
Greetings, how's it going?

क्या आप भी सिटी सेंटर जाने के लिए टाक्सी का इंतज़ार कर रहे हैं?
kyā āpa bhī siṭī sēṇṭara jānē kē liē ṭāksī kā intazāra kara rahē haĩ?
Are you waiting for a taxi to the city center as well?

हाँ, मुझे होटेल ताज जाना है ।
hā̃, mujhē hōṭēla tāja jānā hai
Yes, I have to go to the Taj Hotel.

क्या आप यहाँ छुट्टियाँ बिताने आए हैं?
kyā āpa yahā̃ chuṭṭiyā̃ bitānē āē haĩ?
Are you here on vacation?

नहीं, मैं यहाँ कारोबार के लिए आया हूँ ।
nahī̃, maĩ yahā̃ kārōbāra kē liē āyā hū̃ .
No. I'm here on business.

अच्छा, आप क्या काम करते हैं?
acchā, āpa kyā kāma karatē haĩ?
Oh yes? What do you do for a living?

मैं एक डिसैनर हूँ, आप क्या करती हैं?
maĩ ēka ḍisainara hū̃, āpa kyā karatī haĩ?
I'm a designer. What about you?

मैं अभी काम नहीं करती
maĩ abhī kāma nahī̃ karatī
I'm not working at the moment.

लो, एक टाक्सी आ गई , क्या आप मेरे साथ चलना चाहेंगी?
lō, ēka ṭāksī ā gaī , kyā āpa mērē sātha calanā cāhēngī?
Ah, here is a taxi. Do you want to share the ride?

हाँ, खुशी से
hā̃, khuśī sē
Yes, I'd love to.

सब ठीक हैं?
saba ṭhīka haĩ?
Everything fine?

राजपथ
rājapatha
Freeway

रुचीकर जगह
rucīkara Jagaha
Sights

ज़्यादा तेज़
zyādā tēza
Much faster

से ऊपर
sē ūpara
Above

मैं ने रोहन को देखा है ।
maĩ nē rōhana kō dēkhā hai
I have seen Rohan.

मैं ने संग्रहालय देखा है ।
maĩ nē sangrahālaya dēkhā hai
I have seen the museum.

मुझे होटेल दिख रहे है
mujhē hōṭēl dikha rahā hai(n)
I can see the hotel.

मुझे एक टाक्सी देखती है ।
mujhē ēka ṭāksī dēkhatī hai
I can see a taxi.

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Great!

वह गाडी तेज़ है
vaha gāḍī tēza hai
The car is fast.

मोटर
mōṭara
Car

तेज़, और तेज़!
tēza, aura tēza!
Quicker, quicker!

हाँ, खुशी से
hā̃, khuśī sē
Yes, of course!

मुझे लगता है
mujhē lagatā hai
I think / I believe

मुझे एक किराये की तेज गाडी चाहिए
mujhē ēk kirāyē kī tej gāḍī chāhiē
I would like a fast rental car.

मुझे एक किराये की गाडी की ज़रूरत है ।
mujhē ēka kirāyē kī gāḍī kī zarūrata hai
I need a rental car.

हम्हें खाना है ।
hamhẽ khānā hai
We have to eat.

हम्हें बिना खाए चलना होगा, क्योंकि मैं अपना बटुआ होटेल में भूल आया हूँ|
hamhẽ binā khāē calanā hōgā, kyōnki maĩ apanā baṭuā hōṭēla mẽ bhūla āyā hū̃ |
We have to skip without eating, because I've left my wallet back at the hotel!

बहुत खूब
bahuta khūba
Wonderful

क्या आप तैयार हैं?
kyā āpa taiyāra haĩ?
Are you ready?

अलविदा !!
alavidā !!
Farewell!!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.2 Asking for Directions

We all know that getting lost is part of traveling. But let me tell you a little secret: when you're lost in India, you have a much better chance of getting directions from a smiling face when you can muster up a "namaste." In this lesson, you'll not only learn how to ask for directions, you'll be able to understand the reply!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

अरे, क्या कुछ हुआ है?
arē, kyā kucha huā hai?
Oh dear, has something happened?

क्या तुम्हें मदद की ज़रूरत है?
kyā tumhē̃ madada kī zarūrata hai?
Do you need help?

Nikita

नहीं,नहीं, सब ठीक है
nahī̃,nahī̃, saba ṭhīka hai
No, no, everything's fine.

Rohan

क्या मैं मदद कर सकता हूँ?
kyā maĩ madada kara sakatā hū̃?
Can I help?

Nikita

अरे हाँ, यहाँ से मैं ताज महल कैसे जा सकती हूँ?
arē hā̃, yahā̃ sē maĩ tāja mahala kaisē jā sakatī hū̃?
That would be great. How do I get to the Taj Mahal?

Rohan

आसानी से, वह दूर नहीं है ।
āsānī sē, vaha dūra nahī̃ hai
That's simple. It's not far.

Nikita

मुझे किस दिशा में गाडी चलानी चाहिये?
mujhē kisa diśā mē̃ gāḍī calānī cāhiyē?
In which direction do I have to drive?

Rohan

यहाँ से सीधा आगे जायें और फ़िर अगली यातायात बत्ती से बायीं तरफ़
yahā̃ sē sīdhā āgē jāyē̃ aura fira agalī yātāyāta battī sē bāyī̃ tarafa
Straight ahead here and then turn left at the next traffic lights.

Nikita

बहुत शुक्रिया!
bahuta śukriyā!
Thank you so much.

Rohan

आप इसे भूल नहीं सकती! बिलकुल सामने दिखेगा!
āpa isē bhūla nahī̃ sakatī! bilakula sāmanē dikhēgā!
You can't miss it. It will be right in front of you.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

राजपथ
rājapatha
Highway

अरे, देखिए !
arē, dēkhiē !
Hey, look!

क्या?
kyā?
What?

वह नानो यकीनन एक सौ किलोमीटर से ज़्यादा तेज़ चल रहीं है
vaha nānō yakīnana ēka sau kilōmīṭara sē zyādā tēza cala rahī̃ hai
The Nano is going at over 100 kilometers an hour.

हाँ, मैं उसे देख रही हूँ, वह तेज़ है ।
hā̃, maĩ usē dēkha rahī hū̃, vaha tēza hai .
Yeah, I can see it. That's fast.

क्या मैं उसे पकडने की कोशिश करूँ?
kyā maĩ usē pakaḍanē kī kōśiśa karū̃?
Shall I try to catch up to it?

मुझे नहीं लगता कि हमारी किराए की गाडी इतनी तेज़ जा पाएगी
mujhē nahī̃ lagatā ki hamārī kirāē kī gāḍī itanī tēza jā pāēgī
I don't think our rental car can go that fast.

हाँ, कितनी बकवास है
hā̃, kitanī bakavāsa hai
What a bummer.

हम्हें वैसे भी अगले मार्ग से बाहर निकलना है ।
hamhē̃ vaisē bhī agalē mārga sē bāhara nikalanā hai
We'll have to take the next exit anyway.

और फ़िर ?
aura fira ?
And then?

मुझे मदद (नहीं) चाहिए
mujhē madada (nahī̃) cāhiē
I (don't) need help.

सब ठीक हैं?
saba ṭhīka haĩ?
Is everything okay?

मैं मदद कर सकता हूँ ।
maĩ madada kara sakatā hū̃ .

I can help

ताजमहल कहाँ है ?
tājamahala kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the Taj Mahal?

संग्रहालय कहाँ है ?
sangrahālaya kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the museum?

मैं गिरजाघर को कैसे जा सकता हूँ?
maĩ Girajāghara kō kaisē jā sakatā hū̃?
How do I get to the church?

मैं होटेल को कैसे जा सकता हूँ?
maĩ hōṭēla kō kaisē jā sakatā hū̃?
How do I get to the hotel?

वह यहाँ नहीं है
vaha yahā̃ nahī̃ hai
It is not here.

यह अच्छा नहीं है
yaha acchā nahī̃ hai
This is not good.

खूबसूरत !
khūbasūrata !
Beautiful!

मुझे गाडी चलानी है ।
mujhē gāḍī calānī hai .
I have to drive the car.

दायीं
dāyī̃
Right

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā !
Good job!

बाईं तरफ़
bāī̃ taraf
Left side

यह तेज़ नहीं है
yaha tēza nahī̃ hai
It is not fast.

मैं रेस्टोरेन्ट को कैसे जा सकता हूँ?
maĩ rēsṭōrēnṭa kō kaisē jā sakatā hū̃?
How do I get to the restaurant?

आश्चर्यजनक ! अदभुत !
āścaryajanaka ! adabhuta !
Marvelous!

अलविदा !!
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.3 Going into Town

It's time to hop in a rickshaw and take a tour with Nikita and Rohan to our language learning destination. We'll practice how to ask for the tourist hotspots, plus find out the most direct route to getting there. Let's go!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

नमस्कार !
namaskāra !
Greetings!

सब ठीक हैं?
saba ṭhīka haĩ?
Everything alright?

अरे, क्या कुछ हुआ है? क्या तुम्हें मदद की ज़रूरत है?
arē, kyā kucha huā hai? kyā tumhẽ madada kī zarūrata hai?
Oh dear, has something happened? Do you need help?

नहीं, नहीं सब ठीक हैं |
nahī̃, nahī̃ saba ṭhīka haĩ |
No, no, everything's fine.

क्या मैं मदद कर सकता हूँ?
kyā maĩ madada kara sakatā hū̃?
Can I help?

अरे, हाँ । यहाँ से मैं ताजमहल कैसे जा सकती हूँ?
arē, hā̃ . yahā̃ sē maĩ tājamahala kaisē jā sakatī hū̃?
That would be great. How do I get to the Taj Mahal?

आसानी से । वह दूर नहीं है ।
āsānī sē . vaha dūra nahī̃ hai .
That's simple. It's not far.

मुझे किस दिशा में गाडी चलानी चाहिए?
mujhē kisa diśā mẽ gāḍī calānī cāhiē?
In which direction do I have to drive?

यहाँ से सीधा आगे जायें और फ़िर अगली यातायात बत्ती से बाईं तरफ़
yahā̃ sē sīdhā āgē jāyẽ aura fira agalī yātāyāta battī sē bāī̃ tarafa
Straight ahead here and then turn left at the next traffic lights.

बहुत शुक्रिया
bahuta śukriyā
Thank you so much.

आप इसे भूल नहीं सकती । बिलकुल सामने दिखेगा
āpa isē bhūla nahī̃ sakatī . bilakula sāmanē dikhēgā
You can't miss it. It will be right in front of you.

कल
kala
Yesterday / Tomorrow

मैं कल आग्रा गया था /थी
maĩ kala āgrā gayā thā /thī
I went to Agra yesterday.

मैं कल आग्रा जाऊँगा /जाऊँगी
maĩ kala āgrā jāū̃gā /jāū̃gī
I'm going to Agra tomorrow.

आनेवाला कल
ānēvālā kala
Tomorrow (specific)

बीता हुआ कल
bītā huā kala
Yesterday (specific)

तुम कल क्या करना चाहती हो?
tuma kala kyā karanā cāhatī hō?
What do you want to do tomorrow?

परसों
parasō̃
Day after

सप्ताह का अंत
saptāha kā anta
Weekend

में इस सप्ताह के अंत मैं बाज़ार जाना चाहता हूँ ।
maĩ is saptāh kē ant me(in) bāzār jānā chā-htā hū̃ .
I want to go to the market this weekend.

प्रदर्शनी
pradarśanī
Exhibition

संग्रहालय
sangrahālaya
Museum

सिर्फ़
sirfa
Only / Just

मैं सिर्फ़ टेलेविशन देखना (और बीर पीना) चाहता हूँ ।
maĩ sirfa ṭēlēviśana dēkhanā (aura bīra pīnā) cāhatā hū̃ .
I would just like to watch television (and drink beer).

नई दिल्ली
naī dillī
New Delhi

क्या ये दोनों पुरानी दिल्ली में हैं?
kyā yē dōnō̃ purānī dillī mē̃ haĩ?
Are they both in Old Delhi?

हाँ
hā̃
Yes

मैं सिनेमा जाना पसंद करूँगा ।
maĩ sinēmā jānā pasanda karū̃gā .
I'd like to go to the cinema.

मैं बस लेता हूँ ।
maĩ basa lētā hū̃ .
I take the bus

मैं बस में जाता हूँ ।मैं बस से आता हूँ ।
maĩ basa mẽ jātā hū̃ . maĩ basa sē ātā hū̃ .
I go by bus/I come by bus.

रेल गाडी
rēla gāḍī
Train

मैं कोफ़ी पीना पसंद करूँगा ।
maĩ kōfī pīnā pasanda karū̃gā
I'd like to have a coffee.

क्या यह ठीक है?
kyā yaha ṭhīka hai?
Is it okay ?

मुझे एक किराये की गाडी चाहिए ।क्या यह सम्भव है ?
mujhē ēka kirāyē kī gāḍī cāhiē . kyā yaha sambhava hai ?
I need a rental car. Is that possible?

यह सम्भव नहीं है |
yaha sambhava nahī̃ hai
Of course it's not possible!

एक जाने के लिए तैयार है
ēka jānē kē liē taiyāra hai
One ready to depart.

एक अभी इंतज़ार कर रही है ।
ēka abhī intazāra kara rahī hai .
There is one waiting right now.

क्या हमें यह करना चाहिये?
kyā hamhẽ yaha karanā cha-hiye?
Do we have to do this?

तुम कल क्या देखना चाहती हो?
tuma kala kyā dēkhanā cāhatī hō?
What do you want to see tomorrow?

मैं एक यात्रा टिकट खरीदना चाहती हूँ ।
maĩ ēka yātrā ṭikaṭa kharīdanā cāhatī hū̃ .
I want to buy a travel ticket.

अलविदा !!
alavidā !!
Farewell!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

तुम आज क्या करना चाहती हो?
tuma āja kyā karanā cāhatī hō?
What do you want to do today?

Nikita

मैं लाल क़िला और चान्दनी चौक देखना चाहती हूँ ।

maĩ lāla qilā aura cāndanī cauka dēkhanā cāhatī hū̃ .
I would like to see the Red Fort and Chandni Chowk.

Rohan

ये दोनों पुरानी दिल्ली में हैं ।
yē dōnõ purānī dillī mẽ haĩ .
They’re both in Old Delhi.

Nikita

मैं ग्रीन बस में जाना पसन्द करूंगी, क्या यह सम्भव है?
maĩ grīna basa mẽ jānā pasanda karūngī, kyā yaha sambhava hai?
I’d love to go by the Green bus. Is that possible?

Rohan

वह एक अभी इन्तज़ार कर रही है, पकडिये!
vaha ēka abhī intazāra kara rahī hai, pakaḍiyē!
There is one right there. Hop on!

Nikita

क्या हम्हें पहले टिकेट नहीं खरीदनी?
kyā hamhẽ pahalē ṭikēṭa nahī̃ kharīdanī?
Don’t we have to buy a ticket first?

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.4 Taking the Bus

It's all aboard the bus as we make our way to two great tourist spots! Have your ticket in hand as we learn the ropes of public transportation in India.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

शुभ दिन!
śubha dina!
Good day.

Nikita

क्या आप लाल क़िला और चान्दनी चौक जायेंगे?
kyā āpa lāla qilā aura cāndanī cauka jāyēngē?
Do you go to the Red Fort and Chandnee Chowk?

Rohan

हाँ
hā̃
Yes.

Nikita

कृपया, बडों के लिये दो टिकेट दीजिये
kṛpayā, baḍō̃ kē liyē dō ṭikēṭa dījiyē
Two tickets for adults please.

Rohan

एक तरफ़ की टिकेट?
ēka tarafa kī ṭikēṭa?
One way ticket?

Nikita

नहीं, कृपया पूरे दिन की टिकेट ।
nahī̃, kṛpayā pūrē dina kī ṭikēṭa.
No, day tickets, please.

क्या हम्हें उन पर मोहर लगवानी पडेगी?
kyā hamhē̃ una para mōhara lagavānī paḍēgī?
Do we have to stamp them?

Rohan

नहीं, यह जरूरी नहीं है ।
nahī̃, yaha jarūrī nahī̃ hai.
No, it’s not necessary.

Nikita

धन्यवाद!
dhanyavāda!
Thanks a lot.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

तुम आज क्या करना चाहती हो?
tuma āja kyā karanā cāhatī hō?
What do you want to do today?

मैं लाल किला और चांदनी चौक देखना चाहती हूँ ।
maĩ lāla kilā aura cāndanī cauka dēkhanā cāhatī hũ .
I would like to see the Red Fort and Chandni Chowk.

ये दोनों पुरानी दिल्ली में हैं ।
yē dōnõ purānī dillī mẽ haĩ .
They're both in Old Delhi.

मैं ग्रीन बस में जाना पसंद करूँगी । क्या यह सम्भव है?
maĩ grīna basa mẽ jānā pasanda karū̃gī . kyā yaha sambhava hai?
I'd love to go by the Green bus. Is that possible?

वहाँ एक अभी इंतज़ार कर रही है । पकडिए!
vahā̃ ēka abhī intazāra kara rahī hai . pakaḍiē!
There is one right there. Hop on!

क्या हम्हें पहले टिकट नहीं खरीदनी?
kyā hamhẽ pahalē ṭikaṭa nahī̃ kharīdanī?
Don't we have to buy a ticket first?

क्या आप सिटी हाल जाएंगे?
kyā āpa siṭī hāla jāēngē?
Do you go to the town hall?

क्या आप संग्रहालय जाएंगे?
kyā āpa sangrahālaya jāēngē?
Do you go to the museum?

कौनसी ग्रीन बस लाल किला जाती है?
kaunasī grīna basa lāla kilā jātī hai?
Which Green bus goes to the Red Fort?

कौनसा रास्ता लाल किला जाता है?
kaunasā rāstā lāla kilā jātā hai?
Which road leads to the Red Fort?

कौनसा ज़हाज़ बन्दरगाह जाता है?
kaunasā zahāza bandaragāha jātā hai?
Which ship goes to the harbor?

बच्चों के लिए दो टिकेट
baccõ kē liē dō ṭikēṭa
Two children's tickets

छात्र
chātra
Students

कृपया दो बडों की और चार बच्चों की टिकट दीजियें
kṛpayā dō baḍõ kī aur chaār bachõ kī ṭicket dee-jiye(n)
Tickets for two grown-up and four children's please.

एक टिकट

ēka ṭikaṭa
One ticket

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Good job!

कृपया दो बडों के लिए पूरे दिन की टिकट चाहिए ।
kr̥payā dō baḍõ kē liē pūrē dina kī ṭikaṭa cāhiē
Two adult day tickets.

एक आने जाने की टिकट
ēka ānē jānē kī ṭikaṭa
Return ticket

यात्रा पर्ची / यात्रा रसीद
yātrā parcī / yātrā rasīda
Ticket (emphasizes paper portion)

कृपया मुझे दो एक तरफ़ की छात्रों की टिकट दीजिए ।
kr̥payā mujhē dō ēka tarafa kī chātrõ kī ṭikaṭa dījiē
I would like two one-way tickets for students please.

पाँच
pā̃ca
Five

बहुत शुक्रिया
bahuta śukriyā
Thanks a lot

कृपया बडों के लिए पाँच टिकट दीजिए
kr̥payā baḍõ kē liē pā̃ca ṭikaṭa dījiē
Five tickets for adults, please.

मुझे एक तरफ़ की एक टिकट चाहिए ।
mujhē ēka tarafa kī ēka ṭikaṭa cāhiē .
I want a one way ticket.

कृपया पूरे दिन के लिए एक छात्र टिकट दीजिए ।
kr̥payā pūrē dina kē liē ēka chātra ṭikaṭa dījiē
A day ticket for a student, please.

अच्छा किया !
acchā kiyā !
Well done!

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

3.5 Plural

Welcome! Today's lesson is all about plural words. What are these? Well, any time you refer to 'more than one' of an object, you're speaking about the plural. For instance - *pencil* is singular, *pencils* is plural.

Then prepare for a fascinating insight into the use of maps within India in the culture section.

More Than One

Frequently you'll find yourself needing to refer to more than one object: *cars, kids, apples, markets...* these are all plural words. Today's lesson focuses on teaching you the feminine and masculine plural versions of words.



Masculine Words

लड़का
laḍakā
Boy

लडके
laḍakē
Boys

ताला
tālā
Lock

ताले
tālē
Locks

कमरा
kamarā
Room

कमरे
kamarē
Rooms



"*laḍakā*" "boy"   "*laḍakē*" "boys"

So, generally singular masculine words ending with “a” change to end with “e” in plural form. Some masculine words remain unchanged in their plural form.

आदमी
ādamī
Man

आदमी
ādamī
Men

You can use the “a”-“e” rule, but remember there are exceptions, just like in English.

Feminine words

लडकी
laḍakī
Girl

लडकियाँ
laḍakiyā̃
Girls

औरत
aurata
Woman

औरतें
auratẽ
Women

किताब
kitāba
Book

किताबें
kitābẽ
Books

पुस्तक
pustaka
Book



"laḍakī"
"girl"

"laḍakiyā̃"
"girls"

Generally, feminine singular words ending with "*ee*" change to end with "*iyaaAO*" in plural form. Feminine words ending without any vowel sound tend to have "*eM*" at the end when changed to plural. There are also exceptions, but don't worry too much about these yet, we're just starting with the basics!

Revise these singular - plural words often. Practice naming objects around your own home in the plural form, using Hindi words. It'll be hard to start with, but will get easier as you do it more often.

There's one other thing we have to keep in mind when making plurals. Look at the sentences below and see if you can figure it out.

वह एक लड़की है
vaha ēka laḍakī hai
She is a girl

वे लड़कियां हैं
vē laḍakiyā̃ haĩ
They are girls

मेज़ पर एक किताब है
mēza para ēka kitāba hai
There is a book on the table

मेज़ पर चार किताबें हैं
mēza para cāra kitābē̃ haĩ
There are four books on the table

वहां एक रेस्टोरेंट है
vahā̃ ēka rēstorēnta hai
There is a restaurant there

वहां बहुत रेस्टोरेंट हैं
vahā̃ bahuta restorenta haĩ
There are lots of restaurants there

Did you noticed that in all the plural sentences *hai* changes to *haĩ*? This is because *haĩ* is the plural form and so it must agree with the rest of the sentence.

Culture: Maps in India



In general, Indian's don't use maps much! There will of course be government officials and city planners who study their maps studiously, but the average Indian does not rely on maps for help with directions. Instead, people usually help each other to find a destination. It is not unusual if your driver stops in front of a road side tea stall and asks for directions. They even seek directions from pedestrians, other drivers or traffic police officers.

As a result of this lack of familiarity with maps, tourists will probably find it unhelpful to ask the average Indian on the street to help them find their way on their map. If you’re able to find your own way using the map, then it has served its purpose. If you’re not able to do this, you’ll need to find your directions the Indian way; ask someone. Don’t worry; people won’t be bothered by your asking. You may not even find a map in trains, showing different stations. If you are unsure about the station, you will have to ask any fellow Indian passenger. They will be more than happy to help you.

This lack of maps means that communication between people is necessary. Now you think about your own city - if you needed directions, would you stop and ask? Or would you just consult your map or GPS system. Perhaps the use of maps represents the wider difference between Indian and Western societies; the Western desire for independence and privacy is contrasted against Indian ideas of community.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.6 Useful Phrases

This lesson is all about useful words! The idea being, of course, that the time you spend on Rocket Hindi equips you with practical conversational skills - stuff that you can use the minute you step off the plane in India! We're concentrating on two groups: “*time, place, person, thing*” and “*some, any, none, every*” words. We can combine them to create words like*“somewhere, anywhere, someone, something”.*

Useful Phrases

Today you’re going to learn two groups of words that can be combined together to create a large collection of useful words.

- The first group is “*time, place, person, thing”*
- The second group as *“some, any, none, every"*

These two groups can be combined to produce expressions like “somewhere, anywhere, someone, something”. We’ll go through each of the first group and apply the second group wherever it works.

Time

कभी कभी
kabhī kabhī
Sometimes

कभी भी
kabhī bhī
Anytime

हमेशा
hamēśā
Always

कभी नहीं
kabhī nahī̃
Never

कभी ही
kabhī hī
Rarely

The phrase “*kabhī bhī*” can be used in situations as in the example given below.

आप कभी भी मेरे यहाँ आ सकते है |
āpa kabhī bhī mērē yahā̃ ā sakatē hai |
You can come to my place any time

The use of the phrase “*kabhī nahī̃* “ is explained below.

मैं उधर कभी नहीं जाऊँगा / जाऊँगी	maĩ udhara kabhī nahī̃ jāū̃gā / jāū̃gī	I will never go there (male / female)

The word "*nahī̃*" implies the negative (never).

Place

In Hindi there is more than one way of expressing the phrases like "anywhere, nowhere" etc. For example, "anywhere" can be translated in Hindi as “*kahī bhī*” or “*kisee jagah*” .

“āpa kahi͂ bhī jā sakatē hai͂” literally means “You can go anywhere”.

“āpa kahi͂ nahi͂ jā sakatē hai͂” implies “You can go nowhere” or “You cannot go anywhere”.

कहीं भी
kahi͂ bhī
Anywhere

कहीं नहीं
kahi͂ nahi͂
Nowhere

हर जगह
hara jagaha
Everywhere

आप कहीं भी जा सकते हैं ।
āpa kahi͂ bhī jā sakatē hai͂ .
You can go anywhere

आप कहीं नहीं जा सकते हैं ।
āpa kahi͂ nahi͂ jā sakatē hai͂
You cannot go anywhere

Person

कोई
kōī
Someone

कोई भी
kōī bhī
Anyone

कोई नहीं
kōī nahi͂
No one

सभी
sabhī
Everyone

कोई न कोई
kōī na kōī
Someone or other

Combining with other words

You may have noticed that when we use different combinations of words with "kōī" we made words with different meanings.

*“*udhara kōī hai *”*= There is someone

“kōī bhī jā sakatā hai.”= Anyone can go

“udhara kōī nahi͂ hai”= There is no one over there

"sabhī jā sakatē hai͂”= Everyone can go

उधर कोई है ।
udhara kōī hai
There is someone

कोई भी जा सकता है।
kōī bhī jā sakatā hai.
Anyone can go

उधर कोई नहीं है ।
udhara kōī nahĩ hai .
There is no one

सभी जा सकते हैं।
sabhī jā sakatē haĩ
Everyone can go

Thing

Now lets look at all of the phrase we can use to refer to an object or idea.

कुछ
kucha
Something

कुछ भी
kucha bhī
Anything

कुछ नहीं
kucha nahĩ
Nothing

सब कुछ
saba kucha
Everything

कुछ न कुछ
kucha na kucha
Something or other

"udhara kucha hai"= There is something

"āpa kucha bhī khā sakatē haĩ"= You can eat anything

"udhara kucha nahĩ hai"= There is nothing.

"āpa saba kucha khā sakatē haĩ"= You can eat everything.

उधर कुछ है ।
udhara kucha hai .
There is something

आप कुछ भी खा सकते हैं ।
āpa kucha bhī khā sakatē haĩ .
You can eat anything

उधर कुछ नहीं है ।
udhara kucha nahĩ hai
There is nothing

आप सब कुछ खा सकते हैं ।
āpa saba kucha khā sakatē haĩ
You can eat everything

Patterns

There are patterns in these tables that will help you to figure out how to form words. These patterns are...

Time
Root word: *kabhī*

- kabhī+ bhī= Anytime
- kabhī+ nahī̃= Never

Place
Root word: *kahī̃*

- kahī̃ + bhī= Anywhere
- kahī̃ + nahī̃= Nowhere

Person
Root word: *kōī*

- kōī+ bhī= Anyone
- kōī+ nahī̃= No one

Thing
Root word: *kucha*

- kucha+ bhī= Anything
- kucha+ nahī̃= Nothing

Did you notice that by adding "**bhī**" to the root word, you get the "any" form and by adding **ṅahī̃**", you get the "no" form? Unfortunately the forms with "every" and "some" don't follow a particular pattern, so you will have to learn each of them by heart!

Say it one more time!

In Hindi - particularly in conversational Hindi - we can ever so slightly alter the meaning of something by saying it twice. All of the root words we have used in today's lesson can be used by themselves or repeated for extra effect.

- *kabhī* = sometime
- *kahī̃* = somewhere
- *kōī* = someone
- *kucha* = something

Not lets look at the subtle change that happens when we repeat it!

- *kabhī kabhī* = occasionally
- *kahī̃ kahī̃* = any where
- *kōī kōī* = any one
- *kucha kucha* = just a little something

As you can see the difference is very subtle but you can use this trick to really impress people with your Hindi skills. This can be done with any descriptive word. Look at the sentences below and see how the repetition adds an extra meaning - and watch out for other examples!

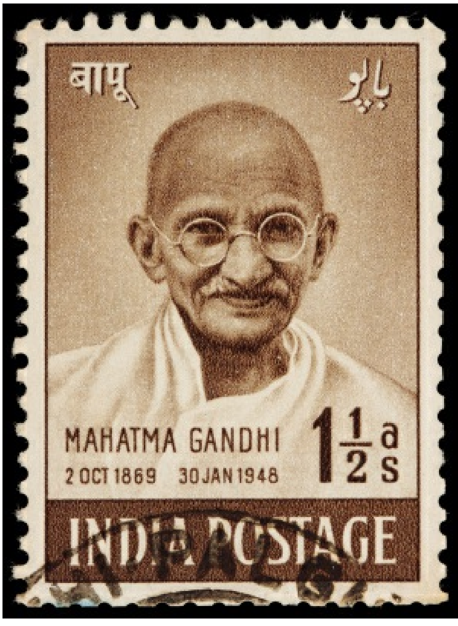
मैं कभी कभी चिकन खाता हूँ / मैं कभी कभी चिकन खाती हूँ
maĩ kabhī kabhī cikana khātā hū̃ (masculine) / maĩ kabhī kabhī cikana khātī hū̃ (feminine)
I occasionally eat chicken

क्या अंदर में कोई कोई है
kyā andara mē kōī kōī hai?
Is there anyone at all inside?

वह कहीं-कहीं जाएगा
vaha kahĩ-kahĩ jāēgā
He will go somewhere or another

मुझे थोड़ी-थोड़ी हिंदी आती है
mujhē thōdī-thōdī hindī ātī hai
I know very little Hindi

Culture: Sending a Package



The Indian Postal Department is run by the Central Government and it is a wide network. You will find a post office in each and every village of India. The services available in village post offices and urban post offices do vary vastly as they serve different demographic segments. The system is a typical British system as the Department was originally established by The East India Company during the colonial days. Even though there are no street names and numbers especially in villages, the delivery system is quite efficient. Most of the postmen are local people, so they know each nook and corner of the locality.

A tradition prevailing in Indian villages regarding Money Order delivery is really interesting. People who receive benefits from local authorities get their payment via Money Orders. So whenever they get the money they give a small amount to the postman who delivers the Money Order as a gift!

Express Mail Service (EMS) is meant for overseas services. It's efficient and reliable and can compete with any other private courier firm. In fact, they are much cheaper than courier services. All the major cities have an EMS counter in the post offices.

There are many courier services including DHL available in major cities of India. Professional Couriers, DTDS, and Blue Dart are the leading courier services in India. The major Indian cities are well connected by domestic flights. So you can expect timely delivery of shipments. The only drawback is the outbreak of strikes. A strike can start any time in India, for any reason. So whenever you plan, it is better to add few days before and after a 'due date' to cope with unexpected occurances!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.7 "Have" and "With"

Today's lesson is all about 'having'. You'll learn how to ask someone "do you have..." and likewise to say that "I have..." You'll find these phrases very handy, particularly when trying to explain medical complaints. For instance, explaining that "I have a sore throat" is impossible without learning the focus phrases of this lesson.

'To have"

While in English we only have one way to express that we 'have' something, in Hindi there are three different ways. Don't be scared though! We have already come across two of the ways so we just need to look at these more closely and add some more context.

There are three distinct ways in which we use the word 'have' in English.

1. To express a RELATIONSHIP. For example: 'I have two sisters'.
2. To express you have an ABSTRACT OBJECT. For example: 'I have a cold'
3. To express you have a PHYSICAL OBJECT. For example: 'I have a pencil'.

We have already come across how to say the first two uses in Hindi so lets refresh our memories of those first.

का/की/के kā/kī/kē

These words came up in one of our earlier units on **possessive pronouns**. We can also use these possessive pronouns to say you have a relationship in Hindi.

मेरा एक भाई है
mērā ēka bhāī hai
I have a brother

उसका एक अमेरिकन दोस्त है
uskā ēka amērikana dosta hai
He/She has an American friend

हमारे दो बच्चे हैं
hamārē dō bacchē haĩ
We have two children

Great, you already knew one way of expressing 'to have' and you didn't even know this! Remember that we only use this way when referring to a living being.

को ko

The second way to say 'have' in Hindi is used when we talk about abstract things. We do this by using the word *ko.* Do you remember coming across this when we learned how to express likes and dislikes? It is used in a very similar way here. In Hindi rather than saying "I have a cold" we say "A cold is to me". Remember that when we add *ko* to pronouns they change like so:

- mai + ko = mujhko OR mujhe
- āpa + ko = āpako
- tuma + ko = tumko
- yaha + ko = isko
- vaha + ko = usko
- ye + ko = inko
- ve + ko = unko
- hama + ko = hamko OR hame

This form is very important as it is how we describe illness. Look at the examples below and try to think of other cases in which we

might use *ko.*

मुझको जुकाम है
mujhkō zukāma hai
I have a cold

मुझे बुखार है
mujhē bukhāra hai
I have a fever

मुझे दस्त है
mujhē dasta hai
I have diarrhoea

आपको खुशी है
āpakō khuśī hai
You are happy (literally You have happiness)

हमको डर है
hamkō dara hai
We are scared (literally We have fear)

In Hindi, the phrases "kē pāsa" and *"*kē sātha*"* are used in place of the English "to have" and "with" respectively. Check out the following situations to see how and when they're used.

के पास kē pāsa(have / has)

We use this final method to express when we have something physical such as a pen, a computer or books. If you remember when we covered postpostions we came across *kē pāsa* meaning near so what we are actually saying is 'there is a computer near me'.

के पास
kē pāsa
have

मेरे पास है
mērē pāsa hai
I have

आप के पास
āpa kē pāsa
You have (male / female)

हमारे पास है
hamārē pāsa hai
We have

उन के पास है
una kē pāsa hai
They have

उस के पास है
usa kē pāsa hai
He has

उस के पास है
usa kē pāsa hai
She has

Examples

मेरे पास कम्प्यूटर है ।
mērē pāsa kampyūṭara hai .
I have a computer

क्या आप के पास कम्प्यूटर है ?
kyā āpa kē pāsa kampyūṭara hai ?
Do you have a computer ?



के साथ kē sātha (With)

के साथ
kē sātha
With

मेरे साथ
mērē sātha
With me

आप के साथ
āpa kē sātha
With you

उस के साथ
usa kē sātha
With him

उस के साथ
usa kē sātha
With her

उन के साथ
una kē sātha
With them

हमारे साथ
hamārē sātha
With us

किस के साथ
kisa kē sātha
With whom

Examples

मीरा किस के साथ गई?
mīrā kisa kē sātha gaī?
With whom did Meera go?

मीरा कृष्ण के साथ गई ।
mīrā kr̥ṣṇa kē sātha gaī .
Meera went with Krishna

Even though the preposition is "kē sātha" it changes to only "sātha" when used in conjunction with some nouns. This is because phrases like "mērē " are formed from the combination of "maiM" meaning "I" and "ke" which is the connector. This is same with

“hamārē ” where “hamārē ” is formed by the combination of “Hama” and “ke”.

You may have noticed that with nouns “āpa” and “kisa” the whole phrase is used (kē sātha) because the combination of “aap” and “ke “ does not make a new word.

Culture: Medical Culture

India is the second largest country in the world. The population is booming, and the medical industry is too! Doctors in India have high earning potential because they are in such high demand.

There are hospitals run by government and private authorities. Medical Colleges, which are government medical institutes, provide good services and provide free service for the general public. But most of the middle-upper class Indians prefer private practitioners for their modern facilities and high standards of hygiene. The doctors, in general, are very efficient. They're often highly skilled at diagnosing a disorder or disease just because of the sheer number of patients they see.



You will find a laboratory and pharmacy in every city of India. The pharmacies may even give you medicine without any prescription. If you name the medicine correctly, you get it! Some experienced pharmacists may even advise you which medicine to use. This is very different to most Western countries.



During your stay in India, if you need any medical aid, it is best to consult your hotel’s management team, and even to bring a small first aid kit containing 'just in case' medications from home to use for traveler's diarrhea, dehydration, allergic reactions and so on.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

3.8 Measurements of Time

In this lesson you’ll learn various measurements of time, including the days of the week and the months of the year. In addition to this, we'll have a chat about telecommunications in India during our culture lesson.

Measurements of time

You may have come across some vocabulary associated with measurements of time; well we think it is ‘time’ to tell you more about time!

सेकेन्ड
sēkēnḍa
Second

पल
pala
Minute

घन्टा
ghanṭā
Hour

दिन
dina
Day

हफ़्ता
haftā
Week

महीना
mahīnā
Month

साल
sāla
Year

शतक
śataka
Century

मिनट
minata
Minute

दशक
daśaka
Decade

आज
āja
Today

कल
kala
Yesterday

कल
kala
Tomorrow

आजकल
ājakala
Nowadays

परसों
parasōn
The day after tomorrow

परसों
parasōn
The day before yesterday

You may have noticed that the words for today and tomorrow are the same. Surprisingly this does not cause as much confusion as it would at first seem, you can always tell what day is being referred to depending on the tense.

Days of the week

सोमवार
sōmavāra
Monday

मंगलवार
mangalavāra
Tuesday

बुधवार
budhavāra
Wednesday

गुरुवार
guruvāra
Thursday

शुक्रवार
śukravāra
Friday

शनिवार
śanivāra
Saturday

रविवार / इतवार
ravivāra / itavāra
Sunday

Months of the year

Traditionally in India months are measured on a lunar basis. This means that there are a whole set of words referring to periods of January - February, February - March etc. By and large these words are not used any more so it is easier and more understandable to use the English terms!

जनवरी
janavarī
January

फरवरी
pharavarī

February

मार्च
mārca
March

अप्रिल
aprila
April

मई
maī
May

जून
jūna
June

जूलै
jūlai
July

आगस्त
āgasta
August

सितंबर
sitambara
September

अक्तूबर
aktūbara
October

नवंबर
navambara
November

दिसंबर
disambara
December

That's all for today, your homework is to practice and learn those words! There aren't many, so it shouldn't be too difficult. Perhaps consider renaming a calendar at home with some Hindi words? Each time you make a small effort to integrate Hindi into your daily life, you're taking a step closer to language mastery!



Culture: Telecommunications in India



The British regime bought many modern things to India. One of the most enduring and profitable was telecommunications. The first telephone exchange in India was opened on 28th January, 1882; six years after Alexander Graham Bell patented the first telephone instrument. Bharat Sanchar Nigam Ltd (BSNL- India's leading service provider) is now the world's largest Telecommunications Company. The company provides a widespread variety of services like wire line, CDMA mobile, GSM mobile, and broadband and dial-up internet.

In early stages of development, telephones were considered symbols of luxury and affluence. But now the telephone has become a basic commodity among the Indian population. Almost every household with a moderate income has a fixed telephone connection. Recently there was a connection provision run by Reliance, aimed at connecting rural households. 'Reliance' is the major competitor for BSNL in the field of land line phone connections.

The last five years have seen an immense hike in the number of mobile phone users. Availability of cheap handsets and a wide range of service providers to choose from have made mobile phones very popular. You can see a fisherman, travling on his scooter arranging business on his mobile phone! This was not the situation about eight years ago! The major mobile phone service providers are BSNL, Reliance, Hutch (Vodafone), Idea and Airtel. The high competition reduces the call cost and so more people enjoy the benefits of having a mobile phone.

There are both pre-paid and post paid connections for mobile phones. Generally people prefer “pay as you go” .Top up cards for denominations starting from Rs.10 are available. These cards are also available in almost every city in India. A drawback of the Indian mobile phone system is the huge interstate roaming charges. If you are traveling from Delhi to Kashmir, you will be charged for incoming calls if you use a mobile which is registered in Delhi. So by the time you finish your Indian exploration, you may end up with a collection of mobile chips from various Indian states!

In India you will find telephone booths everywhere. There will be at least one booth with the board “STD/ISD/Photocopy/FAX” in every market or busy street. There are also coin operated phones. Using those, you can call any land line or mobile phone in India; for just one rupee!

Internet cafes are also available. In some Internet cafes, you may be asked to show proof of identity! This because after terrorist activities occured, the proprietors are supposed to record the whereabouts of each and every person who uses the cafe facilities. But many of the cafes don’t follow such rules. The minimum charge to use the internet is about ten rupees.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.1 Doing the Groceries

Grab your shopping cart it's time to hit the aisles of an Indian grocery store. We'll get all the essentials, plus cross off some new vocabulary on our shopping list.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

मुझे जल्दी खरीदारी करनी है।
mujhē jaldī kharīdārī karanī hai.
I've got to do the groceries quickly.

Nikita

मैं साथ ही चलती हूँ!
maĩ sātha hī calatī hū̃!
I'll just come along!

Rohan

क्या तुम्हें कुछ चाहिये?
kyā tumhẽ kucha cāhiyē?
Is there anything you need?

Nikita

मुझे आलू और प्याज़ चाहिये, और तुम्हें?
mujhē ālū aura pyāza cāhiyē, aura tumhẽ?
I need a sack of potatoes and onions. And you?

Rohan

आटा , टमाटर, मखन, अन्ड्डे,...
āṭā , ṭamāṭara, makhana, anḍḍē,...
A packet of flour, tomatoes, butter, eggs...

Nikita

और कुछ?
aura kucha?
Anything else?

Rohan

हाँ, एक थैली टोफ़ी।
hā̃, ēka thailī ṭōfī
Yes, a packet of candies.

Nikita

अच्छा, ठीक है!
acchā, ṭhīka hai!
Well, okay.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē

Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

नमस्कार
namaskāra
Greetings!

पूरे दिन की टिकट
pūrē dina kī ṭikaṭa
Round-trip ticket

शुभ दिन
śubha dina
Good day.

क्या आप लाल किला और चांदनी चौक जाएंगे?
kyā āpa lāla kilā aura cāndanī cauka jāēngē?
Do you go to the Red Fort and Chandnee Chowk?

हाँ
hā̃
Yes.

कृपया बडों के लिए दो टिकट दीजिए
kṛpayā baḍõ kē liē dō ṭikaṭa dījiē
Two tickets for adults please.

एक तरफ़ की एक टिकट ?
ēka tarafa kī ēka ṭikaṭa ?
One way?

नहीं, कृपया पूरे दिन की टिकट । क्या हम्हें उन पर मोहर लगवानी पडेगी ?
nahī̃, kṛpayā pūrē dina kī ṭikaṭa . kyā hamhē̃ una para mōhara lagavānī paḍēgī ?
No, day tickets, please. Do we have to stamp them?

नहीं, यह ज़रूरी नहीं है ।
nahī̃, yaha zarūrī nahī̃ hai
No, it's not necessary.

धन्यवाद
dhanyavāda
Thanks a lot.

राशण खरीदारी
rāśaṇa kharīdārī
Grocery shopping

मुझे राशण खरीदना है
mujhē rāśaṇa kharīdanā hai
I have to (quickly) shop for groceries.

मुझे गाडी तेज़ चलानी है ।
mujhē gāḍī tēza calānī hai
I have to drive fast.

मुझे तेज़ बोलना है । मुझे बात जल्दी से करनी है ।
mujhē tēza bōlanā hai . mujhē bāta jaldī sē karanī hai .
I have to speak fast.

मैं साथ चलती हूँ
maĩ sātha calatī hū̃
I'll come along.

क्या तुम्हें चाहिए?

kyā tumhē̃ cāhiē?
Do you need?

क्या तुम्हें टिकट चाहिए?
kyā tumhē̃ ṭikaṭa cāhiē?
Do you need tickets?

क्या तुम्हें दूध और शक्कर चाहिए?
kyā tumhē̃ dūdha aura śakkara cāhiē?
Do you need milk and sugar?

हम्हें आलू और प्याज़ चाहिए
hamhē̃ ālū aura pyāza cāhiē
We need potatoes and onions.

मुझे मदद चाहिए
mujhē madada cāhiē
I need help!

मुझे एक दो पलंग का कमरा चाहिए
mujhē ēka dō palanga kā kamarā cāhiē
I need a double room.

बहुत खूब
bahuta khūba
Very good!

एक थैला आटा
ēka thailā āṭā
A packet of flour

एक किलो आटा
ēka kilō āṭā
A kilogram of flour

मुझे एक थैला आटा चाहिए
mujhē ēka thailā āṭā cāhiē
I would like a packet of flour.

मुझे एक पाकट टोफ़ी चाहिए
mujhē ēka pākaṭa ṭōfī cāhiē
I would like a packet of candy.

स्वादिष्ट
svādiṣṭa
Tasty / Yummy

यह खाना स्वादिष्ट है
yaha khānā svādiṣṭa hai
This meal is yummy.

हम्हें एक दो पलंग का कमरा चाहिए
hamhē̃ ēka dō palanga kā kamarā cāhiē
We need a double room.

मुझे टमाटर चाहिए ।
mujhē ṭamāṭara cāhiē
I want tomatoes.

क्या आप को आटा का एक पाकट चाहिए?
kyā āpa kō āṭā kā ēka pākaṭa cāhiē?
Do you need a packet of flour?

अलविदा
alavidā!
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.2 In the Kitchen

With our cupboards packed full from our shopping excursion, it's time to put your cooking skills to the test. Stir in a spoonful of Hindi words...you'll be a master chef in no time.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

व्यन्जन विधी कहाँ है...? यह रही...हम्हें एक किलो आटा चाहिये
vyanjana vidhī kahā̃ hai...? yaha rahī...hamhē̃ ēka kilō āṭā cāhiyē
Where is the recipe? Here we go...we need one kilo of flour.

Nikita

एक किलो आटा? हम क्या पका रहे हैं?
ēka kilō āṭā? hama kyā pakā rahē haĩ?
A kilo of flour? What are we cooking?

Rohan

आलू पराठा स्वाभाविक रूप से!
ālū Parāṭhā svābhāvika rūpa sē!
Potato Parantha of course!

Nikita

हम्हें और क्या सामग्री चाहिये?
hamhē̃ aura kyā sāmagrī cāhiyē?
What other ingredients do we need?

Rohan

आठ आलू और चार ग्राम नमक
āṭha ālū aura cāra grāma namaka
Eight potatoes and four grams of salt.

Nikita

यह तो बहुत ज्यादा है!
yaha tō bahuta jyādā hai!
That's a lot!

Rohan

नमक ज्यादा है?
namaka jyādā hai?
A lot of salt?

Nikita

हाह! नहीं, आलू बहुत ज्यादा हैं, बेवकूफ़!
hāha! nahī̃, ālū bahuta jyādā haĩ, bēvakūfa!
Haha! No a lot of potatoes, you fool!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē

Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

कैसा चल रहा है?
kaisā cala rahā hai?
How's it going?

मुझे जल्दी खरीदारी करनी है ।
mujhē jaldī kharīdārī karanī hai .
I've got to do the groceries quickly.

मैं साथ ही चलती हूँ ।
maĩ sātha hī calatī hū̃ .
I'll just come along!

क्या तुम्हें कुछ चाहिए?
kyā tumhẽ kucha cāhiē?
Is there anything you need?

मुझे आलू और प्याज़ चाहिए| और तुम्हें ?
mujhē ālū aura pyāza cāhiē| aura tumhẽ ?
I need a sack of potatoes and onions. And you?

आटा, टमाटर, म्क्खन, अंडे...
āṭā, ṭamāṭara, mkkhana, aṇḍē...
A packet of flour, tomatoes, butter, eggs...

और कुछ?
aura kucha?
Anything else?

हाँ, एक थैली टोफ़ी
hā̃, ēka thailī ṭōfī
Yes, a packet of candies.

अच्छा, ठीक है
acchā, ṭhīka hai
Well, okay.

सब ठीक है?
saba ṭhīka hai?
All good?

मुझे दो लोग चाहिए
mujhē dō lōga cāhiē
I need two people.

संग्रहालय कहाँ है?
sangrahālaya kahā̃ hai?
Where is the museum?

होटेल कहाँ है?
hōṭēla kahā̃ hai?
Where is the hotel?

अगला बाहर जाने का रास्ता कहाँ है
agalā bāhara jānē kā rāstā kahā̃ hai
Where is the next exit?

विधी
vidhī
Prescription / Recipe

हम आज क्या पका रहे हैं?

hama āja kyā pakā rahē haĩ?
What are we cooking today?

हम आज अंडे पका रहे हैं |
hama āja aṇḍē pakā rahē haĩ
We are cooking eggs.

क्या हम टमाटर पका रहे हैं?
kyā hama ṭamāṭara pakā rahē haĩ?
Are we cooking tomatoes?

हाँ, हम टमाटर पका रहे हैं |
hā̃, hama ṭamāṭara pakā rahē haĩ
Yes, we are cooking tomatoes.

हम्हें बहुत सामग्री चाहिए ।
hamhē̃ bahuta sāmagrī cāhiē .
We need many ingredients.

बहुत ज़्यादा
bahuta zyādā
Too much

बहुत सारा धन
bahuta sārā dhana
A lot of money / wealth

बहुत ज़्यादा शक्कर
bahuta zyādā śakkara
Too much sugar

बहुत ज़्यादा लोग
bahuta zyādā lōga
Too many people

बहुत कम
bahuta kama
Too little

बहुत कम समय है
bahuta kama samaya hai
It’s not enough time

रोशनी बहुत कम है
rōśanī bahuta kama hai
There isn’t enough light in my room.

आटा कहाँ है ?
āṭā kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the flour?

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Well done !

जल्दी मिलते हैं
jaldī milatē haĩ
See you soon! (Meet you soon)

Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.3 Making a Reservation

Now that we have a taste for Indian cuisine it's time to indulge with dinner on the town. Tonight we'll have a toast to fine dinning, as we put your Hindi to the test. Book a table, reserve a time, leave your details. You'll being eating in no time!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

व्यंजन विधी कहाँ है..? यह रही.. हम्हें एक किलो आटा चाहिए ।
vyañjana vidhī kahā̃ hai..? yaha rahī.. hamhē̃ ēka kilō āṭā cāhiē .
Where is the recipe? Here we go...we need one kilo of flour.

एक किलो आटा ? हम क्या पका रहे हैं?
ēka kilō āṭā ? hama kyā pakā rahē haĩ?
A kilo of flour? What are we cooking?

आलू पराठा, स्वाभावित !
ālū parāṭhā, svābhāvita !
Potato Parantha of course!

ह्महें और क्या सामग्री चाहिए?
hmhē̃ aura kyā sāmagrī cāhiē?
What other ingredients do we need?

आठ आलू और चार ग्राम नमक
āṭha ālū aura cāra grāma namaka
Eight potatoes and four grams of salt.

यह तो बहुत ज़्यादा है
yaha tō bahuta zyādā hai
That's a lot!

नमक ज़्यादा है?
namaka zyādā hai?
A lot of salt?

हहह! नहीं, आलू बहुत ज़्यादा है, बेवकूफ़ !
hahaha! nahī̃, ālū bahuta zyādā hai, bēvakūfa !
Haha! No a lot of potatoes, you fool!

मैं एक टेबल आरक्षित करना चाहता हूँ ।
maĩ ēka ṭēbala ārakṣita karanā cāhatā hū̃ .
I'd like to reserve a table.

आप कोफ़ी कब पीना चाहेंगी ?
āpa kōfī kaba pīnā cāhēngī ?
When would you like to drink a coffee?

हम्हें कब निकलना है ?
hamhē̃ kaba nikalanā hai ?
When do we have to leave?

मैं कब काम कर रही हूँ?
maĩ kaba kāma kara rahī hū̃?
When am I working?

एक पलंग का कमरा
ēka palanga kā kamarā
A single room

मैं आज रात के लिए एक टेबल आरक्षित करना चाहता हूँ ।
maĩ āja rāta kē liē ēka ṭēbala ārakṣita karanā cāhatā hū̃ .
I'd like to reserve a table for tonight?

एस्प्रेस्सो किसके लिए है ?
ēsprēssō kisakē liē hai ?
For whom is the espresso?

ऊत्तप्पम किसके लिए है ?
ūttappama kisakē liē hai ?
For whom is the Uttapam?

पंद्रह
pandraha
Fifteen (as in euro)

दस
dasa
Ten

नौ
nau
Nine

आठ
āṭha
Eight

सात
sāta
Seven

छह
chaha
Six

पाँच
pā̃ca
Five

चार
cāra
Four

तीन
tīna
Three

दो
dō
Two

एक
ēka
One

शून्य
śūnya
Zero

मुझे पाँच टिकट चाहिए
mujhē pā̃ca ṭikaṭa cāhiē
I need five tickets

कृपया , मुझे तीन टिकट चाहिए
kr̥payā , mujhē tīna ṭikaṭa cāhiē
I would like three tickets please.

फ़िर मिलते हैं
fira milatē haĩ
Catch you later (Meet you again)

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

लिमेरिक रेस्टोरन्ट, शुभ सन्ध्या?
limērika rēsṭōranṭa, śubha sandhyā?
Restaurant "Limerick". Good evening

Nikita

कृपया मैं दो लोगों के लिये एक टेबल आरक्षित करना चाहती हूँ।
kr̥payā maĩ dō lōgō̃ kē liyē ēka ṭēbala ārakṣita karanā cāhatī hū̃.
I'd like to book a table for two, please.

Rohan

कब के लिये?
kaba kē liyē?
For what time?

Nikita

आज रात सात बजे, क्या यह सम्भव है?
āja rāta sāta bajē, kyā yaha sambhava hai?
For 7 o'clock tonight. Is that possible?

Rohan

हाँ, खुशी से। आरक्षण किसके लिये है?
hā̃, khuśī sē. ārakṣaṇa kisakē liyē hai?
Yes, certainly. For whom is the reservation?

Nikita

निकिता शर्मा
nikitā śarmā
Nikita Sharma.

Rohan

क्या आप को सम्पर्क करने का कोई टेलेफोन नम्बर है?
kyā āpa kō samparka karanē kā kōī ṭēlēphōna nambara hai?
Do you have a contact phone number?

Nikita

हाँ, मेरा मोबिल नम्बर शून्य एक सात तीन छह चार आठ नौ दो पाँच (0173-648925) है।
hā̃, mērā mōbila nambara śūnya ēka sāta tīna chaha cāra āṭha nau dō pā̃ca (0173-648925) hai.
Yes, my cell phone number is 0173-648925

Rohan

बहुत धन्यवाद, आज रात को मिलते हैं।
bahuta dhanyavāda, āja rāta kō milatē haĩ.
Thank you. See you tonight.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.4 At the Restaurant

We're seated for dinner and with napkins in place, it's time to order. Let Nikita and Rohan show you how it's done. You'll order a glass of wine, find out the specials, and maybe even uncover the secret to a succulent Tandoori Murga! Be sure to leave room for dessert.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

शुभ सन्ध्या, आप क्या लेंगी?
śubha sandhyā, āpa kyā lēngī?
Good evening. What would you like?

Nikita

कृपया , एक गिलास काजू फेनी
kṛpayā , ēka gilāsa kājū phēnī
A glass of Cashew Feni, thank you.

Rohan

खुशी से, क्या आप खाने के लिये भी कुछ लेना पसन्द करेंगी?
khuśī sē, kyā āpa khānē kē liyē bhī kucha lēnā pasanda karēngī?
Certainly. Would you like something to eat as well?

Nikita

हाँ, आप क्या सलाह देंगे?
hā̃, āpa kyā salāha dēngē?
Yes, what do you recommend?

Rohan

चीस चिल्ली चटनी के साथ, और तन्दूरी मुर्ग़
cīsa cillī caṭanī kē sātha, aura tandūrī murg
Chilli cheese with sauce and roast chicken.

Nikita

क्या आपके पास कुछ शाकाहारी भी है?
kyā āpakē pāsa kucha śākāhārī bhī hai?
Do you also have anything vegetarian?

Rohan

हाँ, दाल मखनी, क्रीम के साथ
hā̃, dāla makhanī, krīma kē sātha
What about black pulses with cream?

Nikita

स्वादिष्ट! मैं यह लूंगी..
svādiṣṭa! maĩ yaha lūngī..
Yum, I'll have that.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē

Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson.

नमस्कार
namaskāra
Greetings!

राजधानी रेस्टोरेन्ट | शुभसंध्या
rājadhānī rēsṭōrēnṭa | śubhasandhyā ?
Restaurant "Limerick". Good evening

कृपया मैं दो लोगों के लिए एक टेबल आरक्षित करना चाहती हूँ ।
kṛpayā maĩ dō lōgō̃ kē liē ēka ṭēbala ārakṣita karanā cāhatī hū̃ .
I'd like to book a table for two, please.

कब के लिए?
kaba kē liē?
For what time?

आज रात सात बजे ।क्या यह सम्भव है?
āja rāta sāta bajē . kyā yaha sambhava hai?
For 7 o'clock tonight. Is that possible?

हाँ, खुशी से ।आरक्षण किसके लिए है?
hā̃, khuśī sē . ārakṣaṇa kisakē liē hai?
Yes, certainly. For whom is the reservation?

क्या आप को संपर्क करने केलिए कोई टेलेफ़ोन नंबर है?
kyā āpa kō samparka karanē kēliē kōī ṭēlēfōna nambara hai?
Do you have a contact phone number?

हाँ, मेरा मोबैल नंबर शून्य एक सात तीन छह चार आठ नौ दो पाँच (0173-648925) है |
hā̃, mērā mōbaila nambara śūnya ēka sāta tīna chaha cāra āṭha nau dō pā̃ca (0173-648925) hai |
Yes, my cell phone number is 0173-648925

बहुत धन्यवाद ।आज रात को मिलते हैं ।
bahuta dhanyavāda . āja rāta kō milatē haĩ .
Thank you. See you tonight.

शुभ दिन
śubha dina
Good day

सुप्रभात
suprabhāta
Good morning

शुभ रात्रि
śubha rātri
Good night

नमस्ते
namastē
Hello

नमस्कार
namaskāra
Greetings

कृपया ,एक गिलास लाल मदिरा
kṛpayā ,ēka gilāsa lāla madirā
A glass of red wine, please.

कृपया ,एक गिलास सफ़ेद मदिरा

kṛpayā ,ēka gilāsa safēda madirā
A glass of white wine, please.

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Well done!

उनकी क्या सलाह है?
unakī kyā salāha hai?
What do they recommend?

क्या आप रेस्टोरेन्ट की सलाह देंगे?
kyā āpa rēsṭōrēnṭa kī salāha dēngē?
Can you recommend the restaurant?

धाबा
dhābā
Roadside food stall

मैं कुछ शाकाहारी पसंद करूँगा
maĩ kucha śākāhārī pasanda karū̃gā
I would prefer something vegetarian.

क्या आप के पास सब कुछ हैं?
Kya aapke paas sabkuch hai?
Do you have everything?

क्या हमारे पास सब कुछ हैं?
kyā hamarey kē paas saba kucha haĩ?
Do we have everything?

हम्हारे पास टिकट है
hamhārē pāsa ṭikaṭa hai
We have tickets.

मेरे पास एक टिकट है ।
mērē pāsa ēka ṭikaṭa hai .
I have a ticket.

तुम्हारे पास है ..
tumhārē pāsa hai ..
You have...

क्या तुम्हारे पास टिकट है ?
kyā tumhārē pāsa ṭikaṭa hai ?
Do you have tickets?

कृपया , दो गिलास लाल मदिरा
kṛpayā , dō gilāsa lāla madirā
Two glasses of red wine, please.

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.5 The Present Tense

Hello and welcome back! In our last Rocket Hindi lesson, you learned how to talk about events that had already happened, that is, referring to the past tense. For instance *"he was drinking, she saw, they went"* are all set in the past tense.

In today's lesson, we're focusing on how to express an event that is happening right now, in the present tense. This will allow you to use phrases like *"I am drinking, she is seeing, they're going"* Another incredibly useful set of skills to arm yourself with before visiting India!

Before we jump into talking in the present, we're going to take a quick look at verbs in Hindi, how they are formed and what parts we use.

Verbs

Verbs are 'doing' or 'being' words. They form the bedrock of sentences and it's the verbs we have to change to talk in different tenses. Verbs by themselves come in what is called the **infinitive form**. Here's a couple of sentences in English with the infinitive form the verb added to the end.

- I am running. (to run)
- I was speaking. (to speak)
- I am listening. (to listen)

So in English we can roughly say that to make the infinitive we have to add "to" in front of the word. If we take the "to" away we are left with the **verb stem**. So the stem of "to run" is simply "run".

In Hindi we can tell a verb is in it's infinitive form as it will end in ना *nā*. When we remove this we are left with the stem.

- होना *honā* = हो + ना (*ho+nā)*
- करना *karnā* =कर + ना (*kar+nā)*
- जाना *jānā* =जा + ना (*jā+nā)*
- आना *ānā* =आ + ना (*ā+nā)*
- देखना *dekhnā* =देख + ना (*dekh+nā)*

Whenever we change a verb for a certain tense, we take only the verb stem (*ho, kar, jā, ā, dekh)* and add the appropriate ending for the tense.

Great! Now you have a grounding in how verbs are made up in Hindi lets jump into talking about the present.

The Present Tense

Whenever you're talking about a situation or an event that is occuring right now, you're going to have to use verbs in their 'present tense' form. In English, we often do this by adding an '-ing' ending: singing, writing, clapping.

In Hindi, there are also certain patterns to follow depending on the pronoun (I, you, she, we words) and the gender of the subject.

Follow these rules to change verbs into the present tense:

Pronoun	***Verb Stem***	***Rule***	***Present Tense***
I (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add tī hũ̄	**maĩ dauṛatī hũ̄**
I (masc)	**Dauṛa**	Add tā hũ̄	**maĩ dauṛatā hũ̄**
You (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add tī hō	**tuma dauṛatī hō**

You (masc)	**Daurạ**	Add tē hō	**tuma daurạtē hō**
They	**Daurạ**	Add tē haĩ	**vē daurạtē haĩ**
We	**Daurạ**	Add tē haĩ	**hama daurạtē haĩ**
He	**Daurạ**	Add tā hai	**vaha daurạtā hai**
She	**Daurạ**	Add tī hai	**vaha daurạtī hai**

पीना pīnā = to drink

पीना
pīnā
To drink

Now that you know those basic rules, let's see them in action with the example of the verb*"to drink".*

मैं पीता हूँ
maĩ pītā hū̃
I'm drinking (male)

मैं पीती हूँ
maĩ pītī hū̃
I'm drinking (female)

तुम पीते हो
tuma pītē hō
You are drinking (male)

तुम पीती हो
tuma pītī hō
You are drinking (female)

आप पीते हैं
āpa pītē haĩ
You are drinking (formal/polite)

हम पीते हैं
hama pītē haĩ
We are drinking

वे पीते हैं
vē pītē haĩ
They are drinking

वह पीता है
vaha pītā hai
He is drinking

वह पीती है
vaha pītī hai
She is drinking







"hama pītē haĩ" "We are drinking"	"maĩ pītā hū̃" "I'm drinking" (male)	"tuma pītē hō" "You are drinking" (male)

Great, that wasn't so bad was it? If you find it a bit tricky to begin with, don't feel despondent. It will become easier as you spend more time on it.

देखना dēkhanā = to see

देखना
dēkhanā
To See

Okay, now let's check out another verb *"to see"*. The table below illustrates how it changes with different pronoun and gender combinations.

मैं देखता हूँ
maĩ dēkhatā hū̃
I am seeing (male)

मैं देखती हूँ
maĩ dēkhatī hū̃
I am seeing (female)

तुम देखते हो
tuma dēkhatē hō
You are seeing (male)

तुम देखती हो
tuma dēkhatī hō
You are seeing (female)

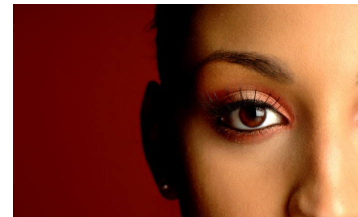
आप देखते हैं
āpa dēkhatē haĩ
You are seeing (formal/polite)

हम देखते हैं
hama dēkhatē haĩ
We are seeing

वे देखते हैं
vē dēkhatē haĩ
They are seeing

वह देखता है
vaha dēkhatā hai
He is seeing

वह देखती है
vaha dēkhatī hai
She is seeing


"vaha dēkhatī hai"
"she is seeing"


"maĩ dēkhatā hū̃"
"I am seeing" (male)


"hama dēkhatē haĩ"
"we are seeing"

जाना jānā = to go

जाना
jānā
To go

Lucky last - we're looking at the verb *"to go"*.

मैं जाता हूँ
maĩ jātā hū̃
I am going (male)

मैं जाती हूँ
maĩ jātī hū̃
I am going (female)

तुम जाते हो
tuma jātē hō
You are going (male)

तुम जाती हो
tuma jātī hō
You are going (female)

आप जाते हैं
āpa jātē haĩ
You are going (Formal / Polite)

हम जाते हैं
hama jātē haĩ
We are going

वे जाते हैं
vē jātē haĩ
They are going

वह जाता है
vaha jātā hai
He is going

वह जाती है
vaha jātī hai
She is going



"maĩ jātā hū̃"
"I am going" (male)



"vē jātē haĩ"
"he is going"



"hama jātē haĩ"
"we are going"

Learn those rules!

So, just remember to keep referring to that table at the start of this lesson. Once you've got the 'rules' memorised, forming the present tense will be a piece of cake!

Take Note!

Have you noticed something odd about the sentences above? All of the verbs come right at the end of the sentences! Hindi is called a 'verb last' language for exactly this reason - the verbs always come last! Lets look at the sentence below:

मैं चाय पिता हूँ *mãi chāya pītā hū̃* I am drinking tea

If we were to translate the Hindi phrase without changing the word order it would be "I tea drinking am". All Hindi sentences must have the verbs right at the end. Look at these longer sentences and notice that no matter how long the sentence is, the position of the verbs never changes.

मैं फिल्म देखता हूँ
maĩ filma dēkhtā hū̃
I am watching a film

हम घर जाते हैं
hama ghara jāte haĩ
We are going home

क्या आप पनीर खाते हैं?
kyā āpa panīra khātē haĩ?
Do you eat cheese?

वह मेरे घर आती है
vaha mērē ghara ātī hai
She is coming to my house

ये लड़के स्कूल जाते हैं
yē ladkē skula jātē haĩ
These boys are going to school

Culture: Languages and Literature in India



The Republic of India has 22 officially recognized languages. In other words, the Indian states are more or less based on the language that the majority of population speak in each state. Hindi is the National Language of India. English is also taught from very early stages and is widely used in India.

- Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Delhi, Himachal Pradesh, Jammu and Kashmir and almost all North Indian States – Hindi
- Kerala- Malayalam
- Karnataka- Kannada
- Tamil Nadu- Tamil
- Andhra Pradesh- Telugu
- Maharashtra- Marathi/ Hindi
- Gujarat- Gujrathi / Hindi
- Rajasthan- Rajasthani / Hindi
- Orissa- Oriya
- Punjab- Punjabi
- West Bengal- Bengali
- North Eastern states like Assam, Meghalaya, Sikkim, Manipur, Nagaland and Tripura have different tribal languages.



Other spoken languages are

- Sindhi
- Tulu
- Konkani etc.



Indian literature in archaic Indian language has five branches as mentioned below

- Vedic literature
- Epic Sanskrit literature
- Classical Sanskrit literature
- Prakrit literature
- Pali literature

Ancient language Sanskrit is considered to be the origin of all Indian languages. Rig Veda, a collection of sacred hymns, written in

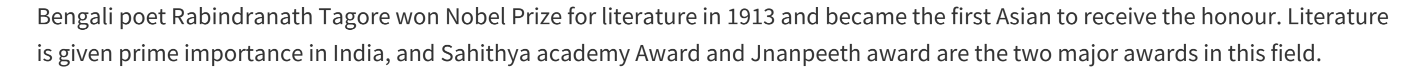
Sanskrit and created during 1500-1200 BC is considered as the landmark of the beginning of Sanskrit literature. Ramayana and Mahabharata are great epics in Sanskrit.



Indian literature in common languages include:

- Assameese literature
- Bengali literature
- Bhojpuri literature
- Hindi literature
- Malayalam literature
- Kannada literature
- Tamil literature
- Telugu literature
- Gujarathi literature
- Urdu literature

Bengali poet Rabindranath Tagore won Nobel Prize for literature in 1913 and became the first Asian to receive the honour. Literature is given prime importance in India, and Sahithya academy Award and Jnanpeeth award are the two major awards in this field.



USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.6 The Past Tense

Often we refer to something that someone 'was' doing, for example: he was skipping, she was crying, they were playing. The action word, or verb in those sentences is set in the past tense because it indicates something that has already happened. You already know a little bit about Hindi verbs, today we're going to learn how to put verbs into the past tense. After the work on verbs, things are going to get glamorous as we take a look at Indian celebrities in our culture section.

Past Tense

To put it simply, the past tense is used to refer to something in the past, it's history! When you think of how we do this in English though there is more than one way of talking about the past. Lets look at these three sentences below and see what the difference is.

1. I used to go to the market
2. I went to the market
3. I was going to the market

As you can see in these sentences, we say something slightly different to imply different periods of time. In sentence 1 we get the feeling that this event happened regularly in the past whereas sentence 2 seems like a one off event. Sentence 3 is an example that we often find in storytelling, we might be talking about the past but the action (going to the market) hasn't yet been finished.

In this lesson we will look at how to phrase the first two examples in Hindi.

सामान्य भूत काल
sāmānya bhūta kāla
Simple past tense

अपूर्ण भूत काल
apūrṇa bhūta kāla
Incomplete past tense

पूर्ण भूत काल
pūrṇa bhūta kāla
Complete past tense

Here's a quick run-down of what each tense means, and when to use each one:

Simple past- *sāmānya bhūta kāla*- To state some action that had happened, and the time of action is unknown

Eg: He went : Vaha gayā

She ate : Vaha *khāī*

Incomplete Past Tense- *apūrṇa bhūta kāla*- To state some action that had started, but was not completed

Eg: He was studying: Vaha paṛha rahā thā

She was working: Vaha kāma kara *rahī thī*

Complete Past tense - *pūrṇa bhūta kāla*- To state an action that had happened quite a long time ago

Eg: Boy had gone: baccā Gayā thā

She had come: Vaha *āī thī*

Please note that the English tense and Hindi tense are very different; the English terminologies mentioned here are the translation of actual Hindi tense!

I used to go...

main markita jātā hun

The first way we are going to learn to talk about the past is to describe events that used to happen regularly in the past. These are events that shaped large periods of our lives so it's natural that we should want to talk about them.
Look at the sentence above. It doesn't look that different from the sentences we have already been saying does it? Now lets look at it compared to the same sentence in the present tense.

मैं मार्किट जाता हूँ / मैं मार्किट जाती हूँ (masculine/feminine)
maĩ markita jātā hū̃ / maĩ markita jātī hū̃
I go to the market

मैं मार्किट जाता था/ मैं मार्किट जाती थी (masculine/feminine)
maĩ markita jātā thā / maĩ markita jātī thī
I used to go to the market

The only word that has changed is *hun* which has become *tha/thi* in the past. This is because the only aspect we need to change is to insert the past tense of the verb for "to be" or *hona* in Hindi. For those you who remember this from our earlier lessons *hona* is an auxilliary verb. This means that it helps the other words in Hindi make sense. Just like in English it wouldn't make any sense to say "I playing", we have to have AM there for the sentence to make sense. The table below summarises the present and past tense forms of the verb "to be" in Hindi.

	Present Tense	**Past tense**
I... मैं *main*	हूँ *hun*	था/थी *tha/thi*
You... तुम *tuma*	हो *ho*	थे/थीं *the/thin*
You... आप *apa*	हैं *hain*	थे/थीं *the/thin*
He/She/It... वह *vaha*	है *hai*	था/थी *tha/thi*
He/She/It... यह *yaha*	है *hai*	था/थी *tha/thi*
They... वे *ve*	हैं *hain*	थे/थीं *the/thin*
They... ये *ye*	हैं *hain*	थे/थीं *the / thin*
We... हम *ham*	हैं *hain*	थे/थीं *the/thin*

This all looks like a lot to remember but you have already been using most of the words! In fact there are only four new words to learn *tha/thi/the/thin,* we just need to learn when it is appropriate to use them. The answer to that is very simple, these three words mark gender!

- *tha* is masculine singular.
- *thi* is feminine singular
- *the* is masculine plural
- *thin* is feminine plural

So all we have to do is choose the right version based on who or what we are talking about. Simple! Lets look at some real life examples to help all this information settle in.

वह आदमी इंग्लैंड में रहता था
vaha ādmī īnglainda mē rahatā thā
That man used to live in England

मैं अच्छी हिंदी बोलती थी
maĩ acchī hindī bolatī thī
I used to speak good Hindi

क्या आपके पास कंप्यूटर था?
kyā āpakē pāsa kampyutara thā
Did you used to have a computer?

हम अक्सर भारत आते थे
hama aksara bhārata āte thē
We used to come to India often

मैं बहुत सुन्दर थी
maĩ bahuta sundara thī
I was very beautiful

ये एक दफ्तर में काम करते थे
yē ēka daftara mē kāma kartē thē
They used to work in an office

Notice how we can use this form without a verb at all as in "I was very beautiful".

Always keep in mind that postpositions act as breaks in sentences, if there is one then the verb will not agree with the gender of any word coming before it! It is because of this that in the sentence "Did you used to have a computer" we used *tha* rather than *the*.

I was going...

Any time you use words like "were" or "was" you are referring to something that happened in the past. By 'past' I mean it's already happened, it's been and gone, it's history!

We've already studied the other tenses and some other forms of the past so by now you're familiar with the rules we follow to conjugate verbs in different tenses. As usual, we have to make the verb agree depending on the gender and the subject.

The past continuous tense refers to evens which happened in the past but which haven't yet been completed. It's most often seen in story telling such as "I was walking along when..."

In Hindi we form this tense by using a combination of the past simple and the continuous tenses. Its formation is as follows:

verb stem + rahā/rahī/rahē + thā/thī/thē/thīn

Now lets look at this in practice with some familiar verbs being with **sōnā, to sleep.**

Pronoun	*Verb Stem*	*Rule*	*Past Tense*
I (fem)	**sō**	Add rahī thī	**maĩ sō rahī thī**
I (masc)	**sō**	Add rahā thā	**maĩ sō rahā thā**
You (fem)	**sō**	Add rahē thī	**tuma sō rahē thī**
You (masc)	**sō**	Add rahī thē	**tuma sō rahī thē**
They	**sō**	Add rahē thē	**vē sō rahē thē**
We	**sō**	Add rahē thē	**hama sō rahē thē**
He	**sō**	Add rahā thā	**vaha sō rahā thā**
She	**sō**	Add rahī thī	**vaha sō rahī thī**

Some Examples

The examples below show conjugation of the verb *sonaa*" (to sleep)

मैं सो रहा था ।
maĩ sō rahā thā .

I was sleeping (male)

मैं सो रही थी ।
maĩ sō rahī thī
I was sleeping (female)

तुम सो रहे थे ।
tuma sō rahē thē
You were sleeping (male)

तुम सो रही थी ।
tuma sō rahī thī
You were sleeping (female)

तुम /आप सो रहे थे ।
tuma /āpa sō rahē thē
You were sleeping (plural)

हम सो रहे थे ।
hama sō rahē thē
We were sleeping

वे सो रहे थे ।
vē sō rahē thē
They were sleeping

वह सो रहा था ।
vaha sō rahā thā
He was sleeping

वह सो रही थी ।
vaha sō rahī thī
She was sleeping



When...Then...

Usually when we use the past continuous tense we use it to describe what we were doing when something happened. For example:

I was going to the cinema when I saw her.

If you look at this sentence you can see that it is in fact two sentences connected with the word 'when'. In Hindi we do something very similar but first lets try to create the sentence above. First of all lets translate the two independent sentences by themselves:

- **मैं सिनेमा जा रहा था *main sinemā jā rahā thā* - I was going to the cinema**
- **मेने उसको देखा *mene usko dekhā* - I saw her**

Now the final thing we have to do is connect these sentences. We do this by using 'when' and 'then' in Hindi. Note that we not using the question form of when!

जब.........................तब.........................
jaba..........................taba...........................
When.......................Then...........................

Now lets put our sentences into these gaps to finish off our translation:

जब मैं सिनेमा जा रहा था तब मेने उसको देखा
jaba main sinemā jā rahā thā tabamene usko dekhā
I was going to the cinema when I saw he

The technical term for these two words are relatives and co-relatives. This just means that they relate sentences together to join their meanings just like in our sentence above.
Now lets look at some more examples of this in action. As always pay close attention to the agreement with gender and number.

जब मैं धूप में चल रहा था तब मैं बीमार हो गया
jaba maĩ dhoop mē chala rahā thā tab maĩ bimara hō gayā
When I was walking in the sun I became ill

जब मैं भारत आई तब मैं हिंदी सिख रही थी
jaba maĩ bhārat āī taba maĩ hindī sikha rahī thī
When I came to India I was learning Hindi

जब हमने ताज महल देखा तब हम बहुत फोटो खींच रहे थे
jaba hamnē tāja mahala dēkhā taba ham bahuta photo khĩch rahē thē
When we saw the Taj Mahal we were taking lots of photos

जब मैंने आपको देखा तब मैं बाजार जा रहा था
jaba mainē āpakō dēkhā taba maĩ bāzāra jā rahā thā
When I saw you I was going to the Bazaar

जब आप मेरे घर आये तब मैं सो रही थी
jaba āpa mērē ghara āyē taba maĩ sō rahī thī
When you came to my house I was sleeping

जब मैं भारत जा रहा था तब मेने हिंदी सिखने का फैसला किया
jaba maĩ bhārata jā rahā thā taba mēnē hindī sikhnē kā faisalā kiyā
When I was going to India I made the decision to learn Hindi

Culture: India - A Renaissance Country

Present India is famous for Cricket and Bollywood. The Indian cricket team is popular among all the cricketing countries of the world and they are the crowd pullers. India is also popular for human resource in the field of Information Technology.





Bollywood, the Indian Film Industry, is popular all over the world for its music and rich costumes. The film “Slum Dog Millionaire“ which is a collaborative venture between Hollywood and Bollywood, brought the first ever Oscar award to India in 2009.

4.7 The Future Tense

This lesson will equip you with the skills to express phrases about events occuring in the future. For instance: "I am going", "he will come".

In today's culture section you'll get an insight into the ancient 'Vedas".

The Future Tense

In this lesson you'll learn how to put verbs into future tense, so that you can express sentences like: "I will drink" or "He will go".

For the sake of continuity, we're using the same verbs again so that you can compare how they are from one tense to another.

As with forming any other tense, there are certain patterns to follow depending on the pronoun (I, you, she, we words) and the gender of the subject.

Follow these rules to change verbs into the future tense:

Pronoun	***Verb Stem***	***Rule***	***Future Tense***
I (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add ũgī	**Maiṁ dauṛũgī**
I (masc)	**Dauṛa**	Add ũgā	**Maiṁ dauṛũgā**
You (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add ōgī	**Tuma dauṛōgī**
You (masc)	**Dauṛa**	Add ōgē	**Tuma dauṛōgē**
They	**Dauṛa**	Add aingē	**Vē dauṛaingē**
We	**Dauṛa**	Add aingē	**hama dauṛaingē**
He	**Dauṛa**	Add ēgā	**Vaha dauṛēgā**
She	**Dauṛa**	Add ēgī	**Vaha dauṛēgī**

पीना pīnā= to drink

पीना
pīnā
To Drink

मैं पियूंगा
maĩ piyūngā
I'll drink (male)

मैं पियूंगी
maĩ piyūngī
I'll drink (female)

तुम पियोगे
tuma piyōgē
You'll drink (male)

तुम पियोगी
tuma piyōgī

You'll drink (female)

आप पियेंगे
āpa piyēngē
You'll drink (with respect)

हम पियेंगे
hama piyēngē
We will drink

वे पियेंगे
vē piyēngē
They will drink

वह पियेगा
vaha piyēgā
He will drink

वह पियेगी
vaha piyēgī
She will drink

देखना dēkhanā= to see

देखना
dēkhanā
To see

मैं देखूंगा
maĩ dēkhūngā
I'll see (male)

मैं देखूंगी
maĩ dēkhūngī
I'll see (female)

तुम देखोगे
tuma dēkhōgē
You'll see (male)

तुम देखोगी
tuma dēkhōgī
You'll see (female)

आप देखेंगे
āpa dēkhēngē
You'll see (with respect)

हम देखेंगे
hama dēkhēngē
We will see

वे देखेंगे
vē dēkhēngē
They will see

वह देखेगा
vaha dēkhēgā
He will see

वह देखेगी
vaha dēkhēgī
She will see

जाना jānā= to go

जाना
jānā
To Go

Great! Now that we've got an understanding of several ways to talk about the past, present and future lets look at a conversation which will bring this all together!

मैं जाऊँगा
maĩ jāū̃gā
I'll go (male)

मैं जाऊँगी
maĩ jāū̃gī
I'll go (female)

तुम जाओगे
tuma jāōgē
You will go (male)

तुम जाओगी
tuma jāōgī
You will go (female)

आप जाएंगे
āpa jāēngē
You will go (with respect)

हम जाएंगे
hama jāēngē
We will go

वे जाएंगे
vē jāēngē
They will go

वह जाएगा
vaha jāēgā
He will go

वह जाएगी
vaha jāēgī
She will go

Bātachita!

Bātachita means conversation and that's exactly what we are going to do. Below is a conversation between two friends who are trying to make plans in the future. This is a common occurrence so pay close attention. There are even a couple of sentences in the present and past tense to throw you off! Try to read the Hindi first and see if you can understand it before reading the English translation.

Nikita:
अरे यार! क्या हाल है? arē yāra! kyā hāla hai?

Rohan:
ठीक हूँ निकिता, और आप? thik hun Nikita, aur apa?

Nikita:
बढ़िया। बताइए, कभी मेरे घर में आएँगे? badhiya. bataie, kabhi mera ghar me aaenge?

Rohan:
मैं अक्सर आता हूँ! Main aksar ata hun!

Nikita:
ठीक है, आप सही बोलते हैं. thik hai, apa sahi bolte hain

Rohan:
हाँ, फिर मेरे साथ रेस्टॉरेंट जाएंगी? han, phir mere satha restorent jaaengi?

Nikita:
नहीं, हम रेस्टॉरेंट में रोज़ जाते थे. nahin, ham restorent me roz jate the

Rohan:
फिर हम फिल्म देखेंगे! phir ham filma dekhenge

Nikita:
हाँ! चलो! han! chalo!

Did you manage to understand the whole conversation? Don't worry if you didn't. It's one thing to remember the right words but quite another matter to use them in context. Here is the translation, if you didn't get something then look over it again and see if you can understand all the elements of the sentence now.

Nikita: Hey friend! How's it going?
Rohan: I'm fine Nikita, and you?
Nikita: Great. Tell me, will you come to my house sometime?
Rohan: I often come!
Nikita: OK, you are speaking the truth
Rohan: Yes, then will you come to a restaurant with me?
Nikita: No, we used to go to the restaurant every day.
Rohan: Then we will go see a film?
Nikita: Yes, lets go!

Great work! You've earned quite the break after all this grammar! Remember that grammar is the backbone of any language so be sure to refresh yourself on the rules of speaking in the past, present and future often.

Culture: Vedas

“Vedas” are ancient and precious literature composed in Sanskrit Language. There are four Vedas which are “Riga veda”, “Yajur Veda”, “Sama Veda” and “Atharva Veda”. These rich texts are believed to be the foundation of Indian Culture. The Veda language, Sanskrit, is the origin of all Indian languages. Hindi itself uses the Devnagari script which is borrowed from Sanskrit.



There is also another belief that a fifth Veda called “Natyaveda” or “Natyashashtra” that was formulated by adopting a feature from each of the four Vedas. Lyrics were derived from Riga Veda, music from Sama Veda, expressions from Yajur Veda and “Rasa”, which is the essence of any performance art, Atharva veda.“Natyaveda” is the foundation of all Indian classical dance forms including Bharathnatyam, Odissi and Kuchuppudi.



The Vedas and related subjects are so vast and interesting that any one who is interested in such subjects can spend hours searching and reading.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.8 The Continuous Tense

In this lesson you will learn some new grammar structure, after which we will also have a look at India's booming tourism industry - something which may be of particular interest to you!

Hindi Grammar Form: Present Continuous Tense

अपूर्ण वर्तमानकाल	**apūrṇa vartamānakāla**

In Hindi, to express an action that is going to take place, or an action which still continues, we use something called 'apūrṇa vartamānakāla'.

This tense can be identified by the presence of various forms of the word "*rahaa*"

Here is a list of some commonly used forms to show an action is still taking place or is going to take place.

We will use the familiar verb "dauṛa", meaning "to run"

To express an action which has not finished we use the continuous tense. In English this tense is easy to spot, we form the verb by adding -ing to the end. In Hindi, something very similar happens. To do this in Hindi we need to employ the use of another verb to help us.

रहना	*Rahana*	To Stay

We're going to use a form of the *rahana* that we have not yet come across: the past participle. Don't worry about this just now as we will cover this in another topic. For now all we need to know is how we will use this in the continuous tense.

Verb stem by itself + *rahā/rahī/rahē* + auiliary verb

We have to make sure we pick the correct word based on the number and gender of the subject. Lets look at how this words with the familiar verb *dauṛana.*

Pronoun	***Verm Stem***	***Rule***	***The form to show action***
I (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add rahī hū̃	**Maiṁ Dauṛa rahī hū̃**
I (masc)	**Dauṛa**	Add rahā hūm̐	**Maiṁ Dauṛa rahā hūm̐**
You (fem)	**Dauṛa**	Add rahī hō	**Tuma Dauṛa rahī hō**
You (masc)	**Dauṛa**	Add rahē hō	**Tuma Dauṛa rahē hō**
They	**Dauṛa**	Add rahē haĩ	**Vē Dauṛa rahē haĩ**
We	**Dauṛa**	Add rahē haĩ	**Hama Dauṛa rahē haĩ**
He	**Dauṛa**	Add rahā hai	**Vaha Dauṛa rahā hai**
She	**Dauṛa**	Add rahī̃ haĩ	**Vaha Dauṛa rahī̃ haĩ**

Guidelines

Lets simplify this into some solid rules.

The form of "rahā " changes depending on gender and number:

Masc. / Singular	**rahā hai**
Masc. / Plural	**rahē haĩ**
Fem. / Singular	**rahī̃ haĩ**
Fem. / Plural	**rahī̃ haĩ**
I (m)	**rahā hūm̐**

I (f)	**rahī hũ**
You (m)	**rahē hō**
You (f)	**rahī hō**
Maiṁ gā rahā hūm̐	*I am singing*

Verb stem = gā (to sing)
Form of ho = hūm̐(for I ,masculine singular)

Here are some examples of the "apūrṇa vartamānakāla" being used:

आ रहा है ।
ā rahā hai
Coming (masculine singular)

आ रही है ।
ā rahī hai
Coming (feminine singular)

आ रहे हैं ।
ā rahē haĩ
Coming (masculine plural)

आ रहीं हैं ।
ā rahī̃ haĩ
Coming (feminine plural)

Suppose you (male) were talking to your friend on the phone while you were walking to his house, you could say



"Maiṁ ā rahā hūm̐" I am coming.
"Āpa ā rahē haĩ?" Are you coming?

Have you noticed a capital 'M' at the end of each "*hai*" for plural? That is for the nasal sound which appears in plural verbs. It is represented by a dot on top of "हैं".

Here's another example.

जा रहा है ।
jā rahā hai
Going (masculine singular)

जा रही है ।
jā rahī hai .
Going (feminine singular)

जा रहे हैं ।
jā rahē haĩ
Going (masculine plural)

जा रहीं हैं ।
jā rahī̃ haĩ .
Going (feminine plural)

One more example to make you confident

खा रहा है ।
khā rahā hai
Eating (masculine singular)

खा रही है ।
khā rahī hai
Eating (feminine singular)

खा रहे हैं ।
khā rahē haĩ
Eating (masculine plural)

खा रहीं हैं ।
khā rahī̃ haĩ
Eating (feminine plural)



If you want to talk about a man and woman together, you can use the masculine plural form.

Now lets look at these new rules in some full example sentences. Pay attention to the agreement in every sentence and note down any new vocabulary.

आप कहाँ जा रहे हैं?
āpa kahān jā rahe hain?
Where are you going?

मैं हिंदी पढ़ रही हूँ
main hindi padh rahi hun
I am studying Hindi

चुप! वह बोल रहा है!
chup! vaha bol rahā hai!
Be quiet! He is speaking!

यह भारतीय वायलिन बजा रहा है
yaha bhāratiya vāylin bajā rahā hai
He is playing Indian violin

बच्चे खेल रहे हैं
bacche khel rahe hain
The children are playing

मैं एक किताब लिख रही हूँ
main ek kitāba likh rahi hun
I am writing a book

वे क्या कर रहें हैं?
ve kyā kara rehen hain?
What are they doing?

Culture: The Cultural Blend of India



The Indian subcontinent was always an attraction for foreigners, for many reasons. In 1498, Vasco De Gama, a Portuguese Captain, landed on the Indian mainland in the ancient port of Calicut in South India. This was the beginning of the European invasion in India.

Following the Portuguese were the Dutch, French, and finally the British. The Europeans came through various ports along the South-West coast line of India. So there arose several European colonies along that coastal line.

Goa, Pondicherry, Yanem, and Mahe are some examples of such colonies. Out of those, Goa was a Portuguese colony and the rest French colonies. There are several monuments in these places which attract tourists. There are also some European families in these places whose ancestors came to India centuries ago.

While the Southern Part of India was invaded via sea, North India was invaded via land. Kabul (present Afghanistan) Muslims made their way to North India through Punjab and so did Alexander the Great. The Great Himalayas on the North Eastern border prevented any invasion from that direction.

With all of this activity, it's no wonder there are so many different cultures in India!



All such invasions ended up in cultural exchange. Each culture left one legacy or other thus enriching India's cultural heritage. One such monument is Taj Mahal in Agra, in the North India. It is included in the list of seven wonders of the ancient world. The beautiful, marble built monument was constructed by the Mogul Emperor Shajahaan, in sweet memory of his beloved wife Mumthaaz. Tourists who visit India make it a point not to miss this symbol of eternal love.

The innate cultures have also contributed immensely towards India's heritage. There were hundreds of small kingdoms all over India, like the Pallavas, Pandyas and Cholas of the South and The Gupthaas, Chalookyas and Marathas in the North. Each dynasty had their own system of music, arts and sculpture and the rulers encouraged people to excel in their chosen field. This resulted in several great temples, rich literature and beautiful dance and music creations.

Current Indian society is extremely proud of its rich and varied cultural heritage. Government departments like Archaeology and Tourism are trying to preserve cultural monuments, and income from tourists is contributing to this noble cause.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.9 Special Letters

Well, you have made it through the entire Hindi alphabet except for some special letters. Today's writing lesson will particularly entertaining, you'll learn three special letters which may be a bit hard to pronounce to start with, but we'll certainly have fun trying! With this resource on hand, you can read and write Hindi script without much difficulty.

Special Letters

The letters we haven't gone through yet are not really used in every day life, hence I thought it appropriate to leave them until last. Even though they're not very commonly used, it's still good to know them so that if they crop up you are prepared.

So let's look at three special letters of the Hindi alphabet, ready?

क्ष	kSha
त्र	thra
ज्ञ	gna

Words with letter “क्ष “

क्षेत्र
kṣētra
Area or Temple

कक्षा
kakṣā
Class

क्षमा
kṣamā
patience

Words with letter “त्र “

पत्र
patra
Paper

चित्र
citra
Picture

त्रिशूल
triśūla
A spear

Words with letter “ज्ञ “

ज्ञानी
jñānī
Wise man

अज्ञान
ajñāna
Ignorance



"patra"
"paper"



"jñānī"
"wise man"

Keep Persisting!

You'll probably need to look back through previous lessons in order to recall exactly the sound of the letters you're looking for. Don't be afraid to try, it's all learning. Keep persisting too, no one ever accomplished anything great (like learning a language) without trying really hard!

Wishing you all the very best, until next time

फिर मिलेंगे
phira milēngē

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.10 New Vocabulary

Today we're looking at words about learning! That's right, words we associate with places of learning, teachers, students and so on.

New Vocabulary

Let's have a quick review of the words we learned in the last lesson.

क्षेत्र
kṣētra
Area / Temple

कक्षा
kakṣā
Class

क्षमा
kṣamā
Patience

पत्र
patra
Paper

चित्र
citra
Picture

त्रिशूल
triśūla
A spear

विज्ञान
vijñāna
Knowledge

ज्ञानी
jñānī
Wise man

अज्ञान
ajñāna
Ignorance

Wow! You were brilliant.

Now let's have a look at some new words that you may encounter at a place of learning.

किताब
kitāba
Book (feminine)

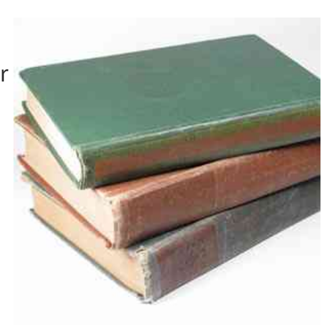
पुस्तक
pustaka
Book (femenine)

मेज़

mēza
Desk

पुस्तकालय
pustakālaya
Library

लिखना
likhanā
To write



Have you noticed that the word "book" has two different counterparts in Hindi; one each in different genders. This is a special characteristic of Hindi to be taken into consideration when you learn grammar in depth.

Now let’s move on to words that describe these places of learning.



कक्षा
kakṣā
Classroom

पाठशाला
pāṭhaśālā
School

विश्वविद्यालय
viśvavidyālaya
University

मस्जिद
masjida
Mosque

गिरजाघर
girajāghara
Church



"kakṣā" "classroom"	"viśvavidyālaya" "university"

How about the people that we might find in these places?

विद्यार्थी
vidyārthī
Student (male)

विद्यार्थिनी
vidyārthinī
Student (female)

अध्यापक
adhyāpaka
Teacher (male)

अध्यापिका
adhyāpikā
Teacher (female)



"adhyāpikā"
"teacher" (female)

"adhyāpaka"
"teacher" (male)

How about the things that we might find in these places?

कलम
kalama
Pen

पेनसिल
pēnasila
Pencil

कागज़
kāgaza
Paper

कम्प्यूटर
kampyūṭara
Computer



"kalama"
"pen"

"pēnasila"
"pencil"

"kāgaza"
"paper"

We'll stop at this point so that you can have a chance to practise writing some of these words.

Good Luck!

फिर मिलेंगे

phira milēngē

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452

Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.11 Useful Words

In this lesson you will learn some additional words that may be useful, such as words relating to Ancient India's monarchy, and some very different words relating to animals.

Useful Words

Here are some words relating to Ancient India's monarchy.

राजा
rājā
King

रानी
rānī
Queen

छत्रपति
chatrapati
Emperor

मन्त्री
mantrī
Minister


Aurungzebe. From an Indian Drawing.

And here are some very different words, relating to animals.

ऊँट
ū̃ṭa
Camel

गधा
gadhā
Donkey

गाय
gāya
Cow

बकरी
bakarī
Goat

हाथी
hāthī
Elephant

बिल्ली
billī
Cat

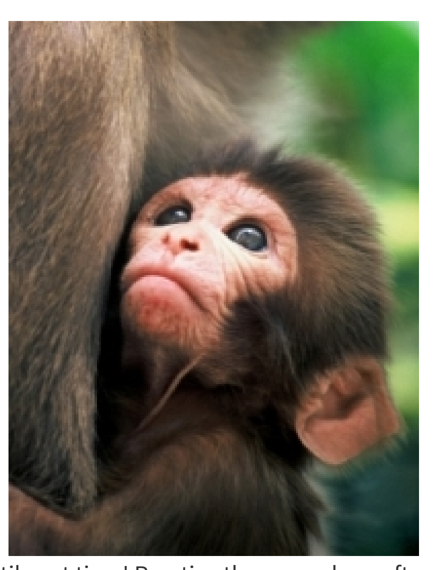
कुत्ता
kuttā
Dog

भैंस
bhaĩsa
Buffalo

शेर
śēra
Lion

बंदर
bandara
Monkey

बाघ
bāgha
Tiger



I think this will be enough to keep you busy until next time! Practice these words as often as possible. If you have pets at home, try to refer to them in Hindi! All of these little activities will help you to really absorb the content of these lessons.

फिर मिलेंगे
phira milēngē*!*

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

4.12 Small Talk

Small talk is a good skill to have in any language, in todays writing lesson we'll learn how to jot down a few things that get conversations going.

Small Talk

In previous lessons you've learned how to greet people. That's an excellent start! What follows after initial greetings is small talk, like "*how are you?*" and "*I am fine thank you*". Today's writing lesson will teach you how to chat with ease!



Before we get into small talk, I'm going to give you a little test: Can you try to sound out and write the following animal names? You may have to refer to previous lessons, which is fine. Take your time and give a try. The English script might make your task a little easier.

kuththaa
Dog

sher
Lion

haaThee
Elephant



"*kuththaa*"
"dog"



"*sher*"
"lion"



"*haaThee*"
"elephant"

Greetings

Okay, now to greetings... you should recognize these ones from our first audio lesson.

नमस्कार
namaskāra
Hello

आप
āpa
You (formal/polite)

मैं अच्छा हूँ ।
maĩ acchā hū̃ .
I am fine (male)

मैं अच्छी हूँ ।
maĩ acchī hū̃
I am fine (female)

धन्यवाद
dhanyavāda
Thank you

स्वागत
svāgata
Welcome

A few more

मैं बहुत अच्छा हूँ ।
maĩ bahuta acchā hū̃ .
I am very well (male)

मैं बहुत अच्छी हूँ ।
maĩ bahuta acchī hū̃ .
I am very well (female)

Questions

How about the questions, then? Let's have a try.

आप कैसे हैं?
āpa kaisē haĩ?
How are you? (male)

आप कैसी हैं?
āpa kaisī haĩ?
How are you? (female)

और आप?
aura āpa?
And you?

I suggest you try writing these words down in their script form, it will take you a little while but it will really improve your written Hindi.

Homework!

In lesson 3.8, you learned the words below. See if you can write them in their script form, referring back to that lesson if you need some prompting.
Good luck!

शुभ कामनायें!
*(*śubha kāmanāyẽ!*)*

dhin
Day

hafthaa
Week

maheenaa
Month

saal
Year

Congratulations! You have completed another Writing lesson. Best of luck with your homework assignment! I'll see you next time...

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.1 Buying a Bottle of Wine

After one glass of Indian wine you've become a wine connoisseur! But you can't leave it up to your taste buds do the talking. It's time to practice your Hindi and learn how to inquire about wine, even purchase a bottle to take home.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या आप सब के साथ सन्तुष्ट हैं?
kyā āpa saba kē sātha santuṣṭa haĩ?
Are you satisfied with everything?

Nikita

धन्यवाद, काजू फेनी सच में बहुत अच्छी है।
dhanyavāda, kājū phēnī saca mẽ bahuta acchī hai.
Thanks, the cashew wine is really very good

Rohan

क्या आप एक अलग मदिरा जांचना पसन्द करेंगी?
kyā āpa ēka alaga madirā jāñcanā pasanda karēngī?
Would you like to try a different wine?

Nikita

खुशी से
khuśī sē
Yes, certainly!

Rohan

टैगर हिल का लाल मदिरा
ṭaigara hila kā lāla madirā
A red wine from Tiger Hill

Nikita

यह भी उत्तम है! मैं एक बोटल काजू फेनी घर पे भेजना पसन्द करूंगी
yaha bhī uttama hai! maĩ ēka bōṭala kājū phēnī ghara pē bhējanā pasanda karūngī
This is excellent as well! I would love to send a bottle of Cashew Feni home

Rohan

आम तौर से हम बन्द बोटल नहीं बेचते ।
āma taura sē hama banda bōṭala nahī̃ bēcatē
Normally we don't sell unopened bottles.

Nikita

कितने अफ़्सोस की बात है!
kitanē afsōsa kī bāta hai!
What a shame!

Rohan

मैं आप को एक छुट्टा देता हूँ ।
maĩ āpa kō ēka chuṭṭā dētā hū̃ .
I'll give you one loose.

Nikita

यह तो बहुत मेहरबानी है, धन्यवाद
yaha tō bahuta mēharabānī hai, dhanyavāda
That is very kind, thank you

Rohan

कोई परेशानी नहीं
kōī parēśānī nahī̃
No problem!

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

शुभ दिन !
śubha dina !
Good day!

शुभ संध्या आप क्या लेंगी?
śubha sandhyā āpa kyā lēngī?
Good evening. What would you like?

कृपया , एक गिलास काजू फेनी
kṛpayā , ēka gilāsa kājū phēnī
Please, a glass of Cashew Feni.

खुशी से । क्या आप खाने के लिए भी कुछ लेना पसंद करेंगी?
khuśī sē . kyā āpa khānē kē liē bhī kucha lēnā pasanda karēngī?
Certainly. Would you like something to eat as well?

हाँ, आप क्या सलाह देंगे?
hā̃, āpa kyā salāha dēngē?
Yes, what do you recommend?

चीस चिल्ली चटणी के साथ और तंदूरी मुर्गा
cīsa cillī caṭaṇī kē sātha aura tandūrī murga
Chilli cheese with sauce and roast chicken.

क्या आप के पास कुछ शाकाहारी भी है?
kyā āpa kē pāsa kucha śākāhārī bhī hai?
Do you also have anything vegetarian?

हाँ, दाल मखनी , क्रीम के साथ
hā̃, dāla makhanī , krīma kē sātha
What about black pulses with cream?

स्वादिष्ट, मैं यह लूँगी
svādiṣṭa, maĩ yaha lū̃gī
Yum, I'll have that.

आप कौनसा पिज़ा जाँचना पसंद करेंगी?
āpa kaunasā pizā jā̃canā pasanda karēngī?
What kind of pizza would you like?

मैं संतुष्ट हूँ
maĩ santuṣṭa hū̃
I am satisfied

मैं खुश हूँ

maĩ khuśa hū̃
I am happy

आप संतुष्ट हैं
āpa santuṣṭa haĩ
you are satisfied

आप खुश हैं
āpa khuśa haĩ
you are happy

वह संतुष्ट है
vaha santuṣṭa hai
he/she is or they are satisfied

वह खुश है
vaha khuśa hai
he/she is or they are happy

हम संतुष्ट हैं
hama santuṣṭa haĩ
We are satisfied

हम खुश हैं
hama khuśa haĩ
We are happy

संग्रहालय बहुत अच्छा है
sangrahālaya bahuta acchā hai
The museum is very good.

यहाँ कोफ़ी बहुत अच्छी है
yahā̃ kōfī bahuta acchī hai
The coffee here is very good.

खूबसूरत
khūbasūrata
Beautiful!

कृपया मैं एक गिलास लेना पसंद करूंगा
kr̥payā maĩ ēka gilāsa lēnā pasanda karūngā
I'd like a glass, please.

मैं एक बोटल मदिरा लेना पसंद करूंगी
maĩ ēka bōṭala madirā lēnā pasanda karūngī
I'd like a bottle of wine

मैं घर जाना चाहता हूँ
maĩ ghara jānā cāhatā hū̃
I want to go home.

मैं यूरोप जाना चाहता हूँ
maĩ yūrōpa jānā cāhatā hū̃
I want to go to Europe.

हम भेजते हैं
hama bhējatē haĩ
We sell...

अपवाद
apavāda
Exceptions

लाल मदिरा सच में अच्छी है
lāla madirā saca mẽ acchī hai
The red wine is really good.

उत्तम !
uttama !
Excellent!

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.2 In the Gift Shop

Gifts are the perfect excuse to go shopping! In this next lesson you'll go off searching for ideal gifts for relatives back home. Using the right words to explain your needs, you'll get perfect souvenirs for everyone on your list.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या आप कुछ विशेष ढूंढ रही हैं?
kyā āpa kucha viśēṣa ḍhūṇḍha rahī haĩ?
Are you looking for something in particular?

Nikita

मैं अपनी चाची के लिये एक छोटी सी यादगार की चीज़ ढूंढ रही हूँ।
maĩ apanī cācī kē liyē ēka chōṭī sī yādagāra kī cīza ḍhūṇḍha rahī hū̃.
I'm looking for a small souvenir for my aunt.

Rohan

नमूने के लिये हमारे पास संगमरमर का ताज महल है।
namūnē kē liyē hamārē pāsa sangamaramara kā tāja mahala hai.
We have, for example, some marble replicas of the Taj Mahal

Nikita

मैं इसे भेजना पसंद करूँगी,
maĩ isē bhējanā pasanda karū̃gī,
I want to send it home;

यह अपेक्षकृत हल्का होना चाहिये।
yaha apēkṣakṛta halkā hōnā cāhiyē
it has to be reasonably light.

Rohan

अपेक्षकृत हल्का? मुझे सोचने दीजिये...
apēkṣakṝta halkā? mujhē sōcanē dījiyē...
Reasonably light? Let me think...

Nikita

क्या आप के पास पारम्परिक कुर्ते हैं?
kyā āpa kē pāsa pāramparika kurtē haĩ?
Do you have any traditional Indian tops?

Rohan

दुर्भाग्यवश नहीं ।
durbhāgyavaśa nahī̃ .
Unfortunately not.

Nikita

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं उन्हें कहाँ से खरीद सकती हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ unhẽ kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatī hū̃?
Do you know where I can get them?

Rohan

अगली दूकान पर कपडे बिकते हैं ।

agalī dūkāna para kapaḍē bikatē haĩ .
The shop next door sells clothes.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं निकिता हूँ
maĩ nikitā hū̃
I'm Nikita

और मैं हूँ रोहन
aura maĩ hū̃ rōhana
And I'm Rohan

आप हैं निकिता
āpa haĩ nikitā
You are Nikita

हम संतुष्ट हैं
hama santuṣṭa haĩ
We are satisfied

क्या आप सब के साथ संतुष्ट हैं?
kyā āpa saba kē sātha santuṣṭa haĩ?
Are you satisfied with everything?

धन्यवाद, काजू फेनी सच में बहुत अच्छी है ।
dhanyavāda, kājū phēnī saca mẽ bahuta acchī hai .
Thanks, the cashew wine is really very good

क्या आप एक अलग मदिरा जाँचना पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āpa ēka alaga madirā jā̃canā pasanda karēngī?
Would you like to try a different wine?

खुशी से ।
khuśī sē
Yes, certainly!

टैगर हिल का लाल मदिरा
ṭaigara hila kā lāla madirā
A red wine from Tiger Hill

यह भी उत्तम है। मैं एक बोटल काजू फेनी घर पर भेजना पसंद करूँगी
yaha bhī uttama hai. maĩ ēka bōṭala kājū phēnī ghara para bhējanā pasanda karū̃gī
This is excellent as well! I would love to send a bottle of Cashew Feni home

साधारण से हम बंद बोटल नहीं भेजते
sādhāraṇa sē hama banda bōṭala nahī̃ bhējatē
Normally we don't sell unopened bottles.

कितने अफ़सोस की बात है
kitanē afasōsa kī bāta hai
What a shame!

मैं आप को एक छुट्टा देता हूँ ।
maĩ āpa kō ēka chuṭṭā dētā hū̃ .
I'll give you one loose.

यह तो बहुत मेहरबानी है , धन्यवाद
yaha tō bahuta mēharabānī hai , dhanyavāda
That is very kind, thank you

कोई परेशानी नहीं
kōī parēśānī nahī̃
No problem!

मैं संग्रहालय ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ sangrahālaya ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for the museum.

मैं होटेल ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ hōṭēla ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for the hotel.

क्या आप संग्रहालय ढूंढ रहे हैं?
kyā āpa sangrahālaya ḍhūṇḍha rahē haĩ?
Are you looking for the museum?

क्या आप रेस्टोरेन्ट ढूंढ रहे हैं?
kyā āpa rēsṭōrēnṭa ḍhūṇḍha rahē haĩ?
Are you looking for the restaurant?

भोजनालय
bhōjanālaya
Restaurant

स्मारिका
smārikā
Souvenir

यह गरम होना चाहिए
yaha garama hōnā cāhiē
It has to be warm.

यह कोफ़ी होनी चाहिए
yaha kōfī hōnī cāhiē
It has to be coffee.

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं पोस्टकार्ड कहाँ खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ pōsṭakārḍa kahā̃ kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy postcards?

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं आलू कहाँ से खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ ālū kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy potatoes?

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं यादगार की चीज़ कहाँ से खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ yādagāra kī cīza kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy souvenirs?

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Well done!

उत्तम
uttama
Excellent

दुकान पर कपडे बिकते हैं
dukāna para kapaḍē bikatē haĩ
The shop sells clothes

दुकान पर कुर्ते बिकते हैं
dukāna para kurtē bikatē haĩ
The shop sells blouses

अगली दुकान पर कोफ़ी मग बिकते हैं
agalī dukāna para kōfī maga bikatē haĩ
The shop next door sells coffee mugs.

क्या आप के पास पारम्परिक कपडे हैं?
kyā āpa kē pāsa pāramparika kapaḍē haĩ?
Do you have traditional clothes?

मैं कुछ विशेष ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ kucha viśēṣa ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for something in particular.

यह हल्का होना चाहिए
yaha halkā hōnā cāhiē
It should be light.

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.2 In the Gift Shop

Gifts are the perfect excuse to go shopping! In this next lesson you'll go off searching for ideal gifts for relatives back home. Using the right words to explain your needs, you'll get perfect souvenirs for everyone on your list.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या आप कुछ विशेष ढूंढ रही हैं?
kyā āpa kucha viśēṣa ḍhūṇḍha rahī haĩ?
Are you looking for something in particular?

Nikita

मैं अपनी चाची के लिये एक छोटी सी यादगार की चीज़ ढूंढ रही हूँ।
maĩ apanī cācī kē liyē ēka chōṭī sī yādagāra kī cīza ḍhūṇḍha rahī hū̃.
I'm looking for a small souvenir for my aunt.

Rohan

नमूने के लिये हमारे पास संगमरमर का ताज महल है।
namūnē kē liyē hamārē pāsa sangamaramara kā tāja mahala hai.
We have, for example, some marble replicas of the Taj Mahal

Nikita

मैं इसे भेजना पसंद करूँगी,
maĩ isē bhējanā pasanda karū̃gī,
I want to send it home;

यह अपेक्षकृत हल्का होना चाहिये।
yaha apēkṣakr̥ta halkā hōnā cāhiyē
it has to be reasonably light.

Rohan

अपेक्षकृत हल्का? मुझे सोचने दीजिये...
apēkṣakr̥̄ta halkā? mujhē sōcanē dījiyē...
Reasonably light? Let me think...

Nikita

क्या आप के पास पारम्परिक कुर्ते हैं?
kyā āpa kē pāsa pāramparika kurtē haĩ?
Do you have any traditional Indian tops?

Rohan

दुर्भाग्यवश नहीं ।
durbhāgyavaśa nahī̃ .
Unfortunately not.

Nikita

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं उन्हें कहाँ से खरीद सकती हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ unhē̃ kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatī hū̃?
Do you know where I can get them?

Rohan

अगली दूकान पर कपडे बिकते हैं ।

agalī dūkāna para kapaḍē bikatē haĩ .
The shop next door sells clothes.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं निकिता हूँ
maĩ nikitā hū̃
I'm Nikita

और मैं हूँ रोहन
aura maĩ hū̃ rōhana
And I'm Rohan

आप हैं निकिता
āpa haĩ nikitā
You are Nikita

हम संतुष्ट हैं
hama santuṣṭa haĩ
We are satisfied

क्या आप सब के साथ संतुष्ट हैं?
kyā āpa saba kē sātha santuṣṭa haĩ?
Are you satisfied with everything?

धन्यवाद, काजू फेनी सच में बहुत अच्छी है ।
dhanyavāda, kājū phēnī saca mẽ bahuta acchī hai .
Thanks, the cashew wine is really very good

क्या आप एक अलग मदिरा जाँचना पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āpa ēka alaga madirā jā̃canā pasanda karēngī?
Would you like to try a different wine?

खुशी से ।
khuśī sē
Yes, certainly!

टैगर हिल का लाल मदिरा
ṭaigara hila kā lāla madirā
A red wine from Tiger Hill

यह भी उत्तम है। मैं एक बोटल काजू फेनी घर पर भेजना पसंद करूँगी
yaha bhī uttama hai. maĩ ēka bōṭala kājū phēnī ghara para bhējanā pasanda karū̃gī
This is excellent as well! I would love to send a bottle of Cashew Feni home

साधारण से हम बंद बोटल नहीं भेजते
sādhāraṇa sē hama banda bōṭala nahī̃ bhējatē
Normally we don't sell unopened bottles.

कितने अफ़सोस की बात है
kitanē afasōsa kī bāta hai
What a shame!

मैं आप को एक छुट्टा देता हूँ ।
maĩ āpa kō ēka chuṭṭā dētā hū̃ .
I'll give you one loose.

यह तो बहुत मेहरबानी है , धन्यवाद
yaha tō bahuta mēharabānī hai , dhanyavāda
That is very kind, thank you

कोई परेशानी नहीं
kōī parēśānī nahī̃
No problem!

मैं संग्रहालय ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ sangrahālaya ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for the museum.

मैं होटेल ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ hōṭēla ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for the hotel.

क्या आप संग्रहालय ढूंढ रहे हैं?
kyā āpa sangrahālaya ḍhūṇḍha rahē haĩ?
Are you looking for the museum?

क्या आप रेस्टोरेन्ट ढूंढ रहे हैं?
kyā āpa rēsṭōrēnṭa ḍhūṇḍha rahē haĩ?
Are you looking for the restaurant?

भोजनालय
bhōjanālaya
Restaurant

स्मारिका
smārikā
Souvenir

यह गरम होना चाहिए
yaha garama hōnā cāhiē
It has to be warm.

यह कोफ़ी होनी चाहिए
yaha kōfī hōnī cāhiē
It has to be coffee.

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं पोस्टकार्ड कहाँ खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ pōsṭakārḍa kahā̃ kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy postcards?

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं आलू कहाँ से खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ ālū kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy potatoes?

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं यादगार की चीज़ कहाँ से खरीद सकता हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ yādagāra kī cīza kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatā hū̃?
Do you know where I can buy souvenirs?

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Well done!

उत्तम
uttama
Excellent

दुकान पर कपडे बिकते हैं
dukāna para kapaḍē bikatē haĩ
The shop sells clothes

दुकान पर कुर्ते बिकते हैं
dukāna para kurtē bikatē haĩ
The shop sells blouses

अगली दुकान पर कोफ़ी मग बिकते हैं
agalī dukāna para kōfī maga bikatē haĩ
The shop next door sells coffee mugs.

क्या आप के पास पारम्परिक कपडे हैं?
kyā āpa kē pāsa pāramparika kapaḍē haĩ?
Do you have traditional clothes?

मैं कुछ विशेष ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ kucha viśēṣa ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for something in particular.

यह हल्का होना चाहिए
yaha halkā hōnā cāhiē
It should be light.

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.3 Retail Therapy

Getting a taste for shopping, Nikita and Rohan lead the way to the next retail outlet where you'll learn how to ask for the right size, compare styles and make a purchase.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

मैं कैसे मदद कर सकता हूँ?
maĩ kaisē madada kara sakatā hū̃?
How can I help?

Nikita

मैं अपनी चाची के लिये एक कुर्ती ढूंढ रही हूँ।
maĩ apanī cācī kē liyē ēka kurtī ḍhūṇḍha rahī hū̃.
I would like to buy an Indian top for my aunt.

Rohan

कौनसा माप?
kaunasā māpa?
Which size?

Nikita

लगभग माप चौवन। मुझे यहाँ यह वाली पसन्द है।
lagabhaga māpa cauvana. mujhē yahā̃ yaha vālī pasanda hai.
About size 54. I like this one here.

Rohan

हमारे पास यह वाली अभाग्यवश सिर्फ़ छत्तीस माप में है।
hamārē pāsa yaha vālī abhāgyavaśa sirfa chattīsa māpa mẽ hai.
Unfortunately, we only have this one left, in size 36.

Nikita

मेरा माप छत्तीस है। मैं इसे अपने लिये लूंगी!
mērā māpa chattīsa hai. maĩ isē apanē liyē lūngī!
I’m size 36. I’ll have it!

Rohan

यह है एक कुर्ती, योग्य शलवार के साथ, माप चौवन में।
yaha hai ēka kurtī, yōgya śalavāra kē sātha, māpa cauvana mẽ.
Here is a top with matching baggy pants in size 54.

Nikita

यह बिलकुल उनकी बनावट का है। मैं दोनों लूंगी।
yaha bilakula unakī banāvaṭa kā hai. maĩ dōnō̃ lūngī.
That’s exactly her style. I’ll take both.

Rohan

क्या आप एक थैली लेना पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āpa ēka thailī lēnā pasanda karēngī?
Would you like a bag?

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

शुभ दिन !
śubha dina !
Good day!

क्या आप कुछ विशेष ढूंढ रही हैं?
kyā āpa kucha viśēṣa ḍhūṇḍha rahī haĩ?
Are you looking for something in particular?

मैं अपनी चाची के लिए एक छोटी सी यादगार की चीज़ ढूंढ रही हूँ
maĩ apanī cācī kē liē ēka chōṭī sī yādagāra kī cīza ḍhūṇḍha rahī hū̃
I'm looking for a small souvenir for my aunt.

नमूने के लिए हमारे पास संगमरमर के ताजमहल है ।
namūnē kē liē hamārē pāsa sangamaramara kē tājamahala hai .
We have, for example, some marble replicas of the Taj Mahal

मैं इसे भेजना पसंद करूँगी । यह अपेक्षकृत हल्का होना चाहिए
maĩ isē bhējanā pasanda karū̃gī. yaha apēkṣakṛta halkā hōnā cāhiē
I want to send it home; it has to be reasonably light.

अपेक्षकृत हल्का? मुझे सोचने दीजिए..
apēkṣakṛta halkā? mujhē sōcanē dījiē..
Reasonably light? Let me think...

क्या आप के पास पारंपरिक कुर्ते हैं?
kyā āpa kē pāsa pāramparika kurtē haĩ?
Do you have any traditional Indian tops?

दुर्भाग्यवश नहीं
durbhāgyavaśa nahī̃
Unfortunately not.

क्या आप जानते हैं मैं उन्हें कहाँ से खरीद सकती हूँ?
kyā āpa jānatē haĩ maĩ unhẽ kahā̃ sē kharīda sakatī hū̃?
Do you know where I can get them?

अगली दुकान पर कपडे बिकते हैं
agalī dukāna para kapaḍē bikatē haĩ
The shop next door sells clothes.

सब कुछ साफ़ हैं?
saba kucha sāfa haĩ?
Everything clear?

कौनसा रंग?
kaunasā ranga?
Which color?

मुझे कुल्फ़ी पसंद है
mujhē kulfī pasanda hai
I like ice cream

मुझे चोकलेट पसंद है
mujhē cōkalēṭa pasanda hai
I like chocolate

मुझे मदिरा पसंद है
mujhē madirā pasanda hai
I like wine

मुझे केक पसंद है
mujhē kēka pasanda hai
I like cake

मुझे ब्लाक फ़ोरेस्ट पसंद है
mujhē blāka fōrēsṭa pasanda hai
I like Black Forest cake

मुझे पसंद है
mujhē pasanda hai...
I like...

बहुत स्वादिष्ट
bahuta svādiṣṭa
Delicious!

कितने सुन्दर कुर्ते हैं!
kitanē sundara kurtē haĩ!
What lovely tops (kurtas)!

हम्हारे पास सिर्फ़ दो कमरे बचे हैं
hamhārē pāsa sirfa dō kamarē bacē haĩ
We only have two rooms left

मैं यहवाला लूँगा
maĩ yahavālā lū̃gā
I'll take this one.

यह बिल्कुल मेरी पसंद का है
yaha Bilkula mērī pasanda kā hai
That is exactly what I like.

खूबसूरत !
khūbasūrata !
Beautiful!

हाँ, मैं एक थैली लेना पसंद करूँगा
hā̃, maĩ ēka thailī lēnā pasanda karū̃gā
Yes, I would like a bag.

क्या आप कुर्ती पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āpa kurtī pasanda karēngī?
Would you like a kurti?

अलविदा !
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.4 Sending a Package

In this lesson you'll connect with family and friends through the mail! We'll be headed to the post office to send off your thoughtful gifts to those back home. You'll learn how to answer questions about the parcel's contents, inquire about the price and confirm that the package has a long way to go!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

कृपया, बतायें?
kṛpayā, batāyẽ?
Yes, please?

Nikita

मैं एक पार्सल अमेरिका भेजना चाहती हूँ ।
maĩ ēka pārsala amērikā bhējanā cāhatī hū̃.
I'd like to send a parcel to America.

Rohan

कृपया इसे तराज़ू पर रखिये ।
kṛpayā isē tarāzū para rakhiyē.
Please put it on the scales.

Nikita

क्या यह बहुत भारी है?
kyā yaha bahuta bhārī hai?
Is it very heavy?

Rohan

इसका वजन तीन किलो से कम है और इसलिये इस का मूल्य एक हज़ार रुपये होगा ।
isakā vajana tīna kilō sē kama hai aura isaliyē isa kā mūlya ēka hazāra rupayē hōgā
It's just under 3 kilos and therefore costs Rs 1000.

Nikita

वह ठीक है ।
vah Teek hai |
That's fine.

Rohan

पार्सल के अन्दर क्या है?
pārsala kē andara kyā hai?
What's in the parcel?

Nikita

एक मदिरा की बोटल और कपडे ।
ēka madirā kī bōṭala aura kapaḍē.
A bottle of wine and clothes.

Rohan

मुझे उम्मीद है कि बोटल ठीक से बंद है ।
mujhē ummīda hai ki bōṭala ṭhīka sē banda hai.
I hope the bottle is wrapped up well.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

नमस्कार !
namaskāra
Greetings!

एक यादगार
ēka yādagāra
A souvenir

मैं कैसे मदद कर सकता हूँ?
maĩ kaisē madada kara sakatā hũ?
How can I help?

मैं अपनी चाची के लिए एक कुर्ती ढूंढ रही हूँ
maĩ apanī cācī kē liē ēka kurtī ḍhūṇḍha rahī hũ
I would like to buy an Indian top for my aunt.

कौनसा माप?
kaunasā māpa?
Which size?

लगभग माप चौवन | मुझे यहाँ यह पसंद है
lagabhaga māpa cauvana | mujhē yahā̃ yaha pasanda hai
About size 54. I like this one here.

हम्हारे पास यहवाली अभाग्यवश सिर्फ़ छत्तीस माप में है
hamhārē pāsa yahavālī abhāgyavaśa sirfa chattīsa māpa mẽ hai
Unfortunately, we only have this one left, in size 36.

मेरा माप छत्तीस है । मैं इसे अपने लिए लूंगी
mērā māpa chattīsa hai . maĩ isē apanē liē lūṅgī
I'm size 36. I'll have it!

यह है एक कुर्ती योग्य सलवार के साथ माप चौवन में
yaha hai ēka kurtī yōgya salavāra kē sātha māpa cauvana mẽ
Here is a top with matching baggy pants in size 54.

यह बिलकुल उनकी बनावट का है । मैं दोनों लूंगी
yaha bilakula unakī banāvaṭa kā hai . maĩ dōnõ lūṅgī
That's exactly her style. I'll take both.

क्या आप एक थैली लेना पसंद करेंगी ?
kyā āpa ēka thailī lēnā pasanda karēngī ?
Would you like a bag?

मैं एक पोस्टकार्ड अमेरिका भेजना चाहती हूँ
maĩ ēka pōsṭakārḍa amērikā bhējanā cāhatī hũ
I would like to send a postcard to America.

मैं एक पोस्टकार्ड इंग्लन्ड भेजना चाहती हूँ
maĩ ēka pōsṭakārḍa inglanḍa bhējanā cāhatī hũ
I would like to send a postcard to England.

मैं घर जाना चाहती हूँ
maĩ ghara jānā cāhatī hũ
I would like to go home.

मैं एक फ़ाक्स घर भेजना चाहती हूँ
maĩ ēka fāksa ghara bhējanā cāhatī hū̃
I would like to send a fax home.

एक मोहर
ēka mōhara
A stamp

मुझे अस्त्रेलिया के लिए एक मोहर चाहिए
mujhē ôsṭrēliyā kē liē ēka mōhara cāhiē
I would like a stamp for Australia.

मुझे न्यूजिलंड की चिट्ठी के लिए एक मोहर चाहिए
mujhē nyūzīlaiṇḍa kī ciṭṭhī kē liē ēka mōhara cāhiē
I would like a stamp for a letter to New Zealand.

वह बहुत भारी है
vaha bahuta bhārī hai
That is heavy!

इस की कीमत
isa kī kīmata
It costs

मैं सोचता हूँ, इसीलिए मैं
maĩ sōcatā hū̃, isīliē maĩ
I think, therefore I am

क्या आप तैयार हैं?
kyā āpa taiyāra haĩ?
Are you ready?

मुझे तीन मोहरें चाहिए
mujhē tīna mōharē̃ cāhiē
I want three stamps.

बहुत अच्छा !
bahuta acchā ! !
Well done!

बाद में मिलते हैं
bāda mē̃ milatē haĩ
See you later!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.5 Comparisons

In daily speech we make many, many comparisons between things. "*My car is faster than yours*" or "*her curry tastes nicer than his*" are two examples of the type of sentences I'm talking about. Today's grammar lesson is going to teach you how to express comparative phrases.
In the culture section where we'll delve into the weird and wonderful world of Indian bazaars!

Comparisons

In the English Language

Adjectives (describing words) are essential for comparisons, as are some basic prepositions such as "than, as" and "like". In English, we tend to simply change the adjective to express comparison: *big* becomes *bigger*, *long* becomes *longer*, *nice* becomes *nicer*, and so on.

The adjective itself describes the degree of comparison; for example,
"Peter is *bigger* than Joe"

Of course in sentences like the one below, we use words like "more" or "less" to show the comparison.
"England is *more* expensive than India"

In the Hindi Language

In Hindi we use prepositions like "*sē* ", "*zyādā* ", "*aura* " help to explain degrees of comparison. By degrees of comparison, I mean how much *bigger/smaller/faster/fitter/longer* something is than something else.

लम्बा / ज़्यादा लम्बा
lambā / zyādā lambā
Long / Longer

अच्छा / ज़्यादा अच्छा
acchā / zyādā acchā
Nice / Nicer

बड़ा/और बड़ा
baṛā /aura baṛā
Big / Bigger

छोटा /और छोटा
chōṭā /aura chōṭā
Small / Smaller

Now let’s try some comparisons using these words.

Remember that as with any other word in Hindi, we have to make the adjective agree with the gender and number of the subject.

आपके बाल मेरे बालों से लम्बे है
āapke bāal mērē bāalo sē lambē hai
Your hair is longer than mine

Or, you could say the same thing with these words:

आपके बाल मेरे बालों से ज़्यादा लम्बे है
āapke bāal mērē bāalo sē zyādā lambē hai
Your hair is longer than mine



मेरी आँखें आप की आँखों से अच्छी हैं
mērī ā̃khē̃ āpa kī ā̃khō̃ sē acchī haĩ
My eyes are nicer than yours



I'm sure that a few more examples will help you to use comparative forms with confidence...

शेर बिल्ली से बड़ा है |
śēra billī sē baṛā hai |
The lion is bigger than the cat

कल से ज़्यादा लोग हैं आज |
kala sē zyādā lōga haĩ āja
There are more people than yesterday

मुझे और चावल चाहिए ।
mujhē aura cāvala cāhiē
I want some more rice, please



Take Note

Here are a couple of points that you may have already picked up on. They may help you to understand this concept a little better!

- You'll notice that in all of these examples the word "sē " has been translated as "than".
- The words "zyādā " and "aura " help to express the degree of comparison, like*"bigger"* or "taller" or "more".

The Best of the Best

The final step we have to learn in making comparisons is learning how to say the 'best'. The way we do this is exactly the same as when we were using "sē" to make comparisons, the only thing we have to add is "saba" before.

saba sē

Then we keep the rest of the sentence normal. So to say 'the best' we would say:

saba sē acchā

Lets look at some examples.

घर का खाना सब से अच्छा है
ghara kā khānā saba sē acchā hai
Home-made food is the best

यह कमरा सब से साफ़ है
yaha kamrā saba sē sāfa hai
This room is the cleanest

अनीता के बाल सब से लम्बे है
anitā ke bāal sab sē lambe hai
Anita's hair is the longest

यह म्यूजियम सब से दिलचस्प है
yaha myujiyama saba sē dilchaspa hai
This is the most interesting museum

यह दिल्ली का सब से अच्छा रेस्टॉरेंट है
yaha dilli kā saba sē acchā restorent hai
This is Delhi's best restaurant

व्याकरण सब से मुशिक्ल बात है
vyākarana saba sē muśkala bāta hai

Culture: Bazaars



If you like shopping, you will LOVE India's bazaars! Shop-aholic's will be right at home, strolling through myriad alleyways, discovering new treasures at every turn. Among Delhi's most famous markets are Chandni Chowk, Connaught place and Karol Bagh. These markets are the oldest and most popular.

Visitors as well as residents are fascinated by the variety and range of items available in these markets. Accessories, jewellery, carpets, handicrafts, semi-precious stones, bamboo items, pottery, bangles, clothing materials, household utensils and other fancy items are available there. People also choose these places to spend a day wandering and eating from the small kiosk food stalls.



Chandni Chowk is popular among those who love “saree”. Saree is a 5 meter long cloth which an average Indian woman wears daily. You really need good practice to put on a saree! The variety of material, colors and printing patterns are amazing. Chandni Chowk is colorful with beautiful saree and silver jewelery. There are several lanes in this market and each one is famous for different items. Katra Neel is famous for cotton, satin, silk, crepe, muslin and many other materials; Bhagirath Place is known for electronic goods; Kinari Bazaar is popular for beautiful works like zari, zardosi, gota and kinari, Dariba Kalan. Ballimaran is famous for leather accessories and Moti Bazaar tempts shoppers with beautiful shawls and fine pearl ornaments. Karol Bagh is the center of trade and business in Delhi. Ready made cotton garments, books, jewelery, cosmetics, fashion accessories are all available in the shops in this center.

Connaught Place in Delhi was named after the Duke of Connaught, Prince Arthur of the Great Britain. The Place was designed by Robert Tor Russell in the 1930's. It's Georgian architectural style was modeled after the Royal Crescent in Bath, England. Inner circle is famed for bookstores. Shoppers can also find international brands like Benetton, Allen Solly, Reebok, Nike and Lee Cooper in the shops here. Janapath Central Cottage Emporium attracts buyers with ethnic clothes, shoes and other gift items. Jewelery with semi-precious stones are also available here. Those who are after wonderful handicrafts must pay a visit to Baba Kharak Singh Marg. Those who want to get a good bargain on electronic goods and dress materials should include Palika Bazaar on their shopping list.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.6 Adjectives

In this lesson you'll learn some more adjective and comparisons. We'll hit the beach later in the Culture section, where you'll learn about all the hot spots on India's coast.

Adjectives and Comparisons

In the previous lesson you had a short glimpse into comparisons. We figured that short introduction was enough for one lesson, but more examples would be helpful. So, this lesson will teach you some more adjectives and show you how to convert them into comparatives. Here are more examples:

मज़ेदार / और मज़ेदार
mazēdāra / aura mazēdāra
Tasty / Tastier

बुरा / और बुरा
burā / aura burā
Bad / Worse

सस्ता / और सस्ता
sastā / aura sastā
Cheap / Cheaper

महंगा / और महंगा
mahangā / aura mahangā
Expensive / More expensive

गंदा / और गंदा
gandā / aura gandā
Dirty / More dirty

साफ़ / और साफ़
sāfa / aura sāfa
Clean / More clean

सुन्दर / और सुन्दर
sundara / aura sundara
Beautiful / More beautiful

रंगीला / और रंगीला
rangilā / aura rangilā
Colourful / More colourful

अच्छा / और अच्छा
acchā / aura acchā
Good / better (more good)

नया / और नया
nayā / aura nayā
New / newer (more new)

पुराना / और पुराना
purānā / aura purānā
Old / older (more old)

दिलचस्प / और दिलचस्प
dilchaspa / aura dilchaspa

Interesting / more interesting



Today we'll give two examples for each word; one example of the adjective being used in it's normal form, and another sentence using the adjective to make a comparison.

यह सेब मज़ेदार है
yaha sēba mazēdāra hai
This apple is tasty

कश्मीर से आए हुए सेब और मज़ेदार हैं
kaśmīra sē āē huē sēba aura mazēdāra haĩ
The apples from Kashmir are tastier.

मुझे बुरा चाय मिला
mujhē burā cāya milā
I got a bad cup of tea

मेरा नाश्ता तो और बुरा था
mērā nāśtā tō aura burā thā
My breakfast was even worse.

यहाँ खाना सस्ता है
yahā̃ khānā sastā hai
The food is cheap here

यहाँ का खाना अमरिका से और सस्ता है
yahā̃ kā khānā amarikā sē aura sastā hai
The food here is cheaper than in the States

दूसरे दूकान से ज़्यादा महंगा है
dūsarē dūkāna sē zyādā mahangā hai
More expensive than the other shop

क्या यह महंगा है?
kyā yaha mahangā hai?
Is this expensive?

यह फर्श गंदा है
yaha farsh gandā hai
The floor is dirty

फर्श से मेज़ और गंदा है!
farsha sē mēza aura gandā hai!
The table is dirtier than the floor!

मेरा घर बहुत साफ़ है
merā ghara bahut sāfa hai
My house is very clean

लेकिन आपका घर और साफ़ है!
lēkina āpakā ghara aura sāfa hai!
But your house is cleaner!

यह साडी सुन्दर है
yaha sarī sundara hai
This sari is beautiful

यह साडी दूसरों से और सुन्दर है
yaha sarī dusron sē aura sundara hai
This sari is more beautiful than the others

यह देश बहुत रंगीला है
yaha dēśa bahuta rangīla hai
This country is very colourful

दुनिया में भारत सब से रंगीला देश है
duniya mē bharata saba sē rangīla dēśa hai
India is the most colourful country in the world

पनीर अच्छा है
panīra acchā hai
Paneer is good

लेकिन मुझे चिकन और अच्छा लगता है
lēkina mujhē chikana aura acchā lagatā hai
But I think chicken is better



So, if you add the word "aura " or "zyādā " before the adjective, you can use it as a comparitive form.

Culture: Beach Culture

The Indian sub continent is surrounded by the Arabian Sea on the West, the Indian Ocean on the South and the Bay of Bengal on the East. These three meet at Cape Comorin, the south most tip of India, situated in the state of Tamil Nadu. This place, called “Kanyakumary” in the regional languages (Malayalam in Kerala and Tamil in Tamil Nadu), is a popular tourist centre. Watching the sun dip into the ocean at dusk here is a special experience.



Generally Indians spend summer evenings on the sea shore, with friends and families. Children fly kites, build sand castles and wade in the water while grownups sit and chat. Vendors try to make the most of it by selling kites, knick-knacks, salted pea nuts, small toys and some tasty yummy local snacks. Mobile ice cream stalls with lots of flavors attract both children and adults. On hot summer days, tender coconuts are also available at these sandy hangouts.



The average Indian, especially women, will not swim or sunbathe, as the Indian culture prevents them from wearing swim suits in public. Occasionally foreign women wearing revealing swimwear are teased on beaches by local men. To avoid making a spectacle, try to follow local protocol. On heavily touristed beaches, wearing a skimpy bikini might be okay, but on smaller beaches frequented by locals, that same bikini may be the source of severe offense!



USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.7 Adverbs

In this lesson you'll learn all about adverbs, so that you can add some descriptive language to your Hindi.

Today's culture section holds some fascinating facts about India's great and revered rivers.

Adverbs

Adverbs, wahoo! Okay so you might not be feeling that excited about learning adverbs, but they are some of the most useful words to put in your language toolbox.

What is an Adverb?

An adverb is used to modify a sentence. Typically it tells us *how, when, where*, and *why* something happens.

> He ran *clumsily*
> She came *alone*
> Hospitals treat patients *well*.
> I had to squeeze through the gap *sideways*.
> He *often* has a headache.

How do we Form Adverbs?

In Hindi, we form adverbs by adding one of kāla vācaka(Time), sthāna vācaka (Place), rīta vācaka(Manner), or parimāṇa vācaka (Quantity) word before the verb in the sentence.

kāla vācaka - abhī (Right now), kabhī kabhī (Sometimes)

sthāna vācaka - yahām̐ (Here), kahām̐ (Where)

rīta vācaka - Jaldī (Quickly), Dhīrē (Slowly)

parimāṇa vācaka - Bahuta(many), Kama(less)

The table below lists some of the commonly used adverbs.

Just like adjectives are used to qualify nouns, adverbs are used to qualify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs. This means that they describe **how** something is being done. They convey different things together and can sometimes be used to alter the meaning of the sentence. Unlike nouns, adverbs are always attached the the action in the sentence. They most common form of adverbs are used to express:

1. Manner - She is speaking **loudly**.
2. Time - He arrived **late**.
3. Place - I put it down **here**.
4. Degree - It was **completely** demolished.

See how the adverbs give you a fuller picture of the sentence. Think of the image you get in your head when reading sentence 4 rather than simply 'It was demolished'. Adverbs are very important as they give sentences extra meaning.

अकेला

akēlā
Alone

अक्सर
aksara
Often

आज कल
āja kala
Now-a-days

जल्दी
jaldī
Quickly

शायद
śāyada
Perhaps

हमेशा
hamēśā
Always

कभी नहीं
kabhī nahī̃
Never

कभी कभी
kabhī kabhī
Some times

Now that you know some adverbs, why don't we try to put them into practice?

वह अकेला गया ।
vaha akēlā gayā .
He went alone.

वह अक्सर आती है ।
vaha aksara ātī hai
She comes often.

आजकल सब कुछ महंगा हैं ।
ājakala saba kucha mahangā haĩ
Everything is expensive now-a-days

जल्दी आइए ।
jaldī āiē
Please come quickly.

शायद वह सो रहा है |
śāyada vaha sō rahā hai
Perhaps he is sleeping

वह हमेशा रोती है ।
vaha hamēśā rōtī hai
She always cries.

मैं वहाँ कभी नहीं जाऊँगा |
maĩ vahā̃ kabhī nahī̃ jāū̃gā
I will never go there.

कभी कभी वह रोती है ।
kabhī kabhī vaha rōtī hai
Sometimes she cries.



Making Adverbs

Everyone knows that in English you can turn almost any word into an adverb by adding 'ly' to the end. In Hindi we do this by the the word with *se*. So we can turn *teza* meaning speed into *teza se* meaning speedily. Here are some common examples used in sentences.

वह कितने तेज़ से दौड़ती है!
vaha kitnē tēza sē daudtī hai!
How fast he runs!

ज़ोर से बुलाओ
zora sē bulāō
Shout loudly

फिर से बताइए
phira sē batāiē
Tell me again

गाड़ी धीरे से चल रही है
gādī dhirē sē chala rahī hai
The car is going slowly

प्यार से बोलिए
pyāra sē bōliē
Speak lovingly

मेरा सामान ध्यान से रखिए
mērā sāmāna dhyāna sē rakhiē
Place my luggage carefully

Culture: Rivers in India

Rivers are Goddesses, according to the Hindu mythology. In Ancient India rivers played a vital role in the daily life of the Indian population. Civilizations like Indus valley were born on the river banks of ancient India.



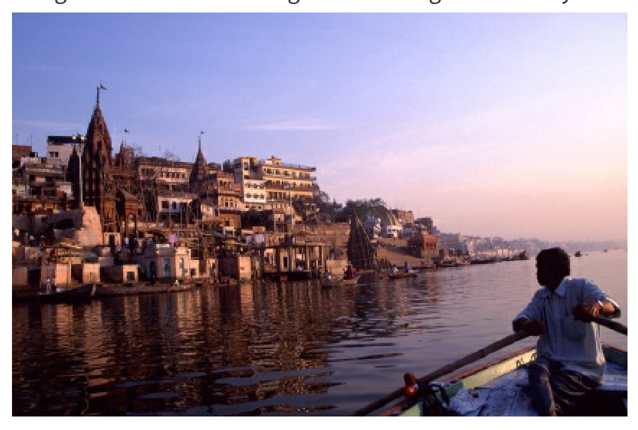
Rivers are mainly classified on the basis of their flow.

Main rivers flowing into the Bay of Bengal are Brahmaputra, Ganga, West Bengal Coastal Rivers, Mahanadi, Godavari, Andhra Pradesh Coastal rivers, Kaveri River and Tamil Nadu Coastal rivers.

Karnataka Coastal Rivers, Coastal Rivers of Goa, Maharashtra Coastal Rivers, Narmada River, Mahi River, Sabarmati River and Indus river flow into the Arabian Sea along the North west coast.

There are several other rivers which flow into the inner part of India. The Indian state of Punjab got its name from the presence of “five rivers”. The word “Punjab” can be translated as “The Land of Five Rivers”. Those five rivers are Sutlej, Ravi, Beas, Chenab and Jhelum. These rivers flow through the India and Pakistani Punjab. They are currently known as Panjnad River. In Sanskrit “Panch” is “Five” and “nadi” is river.

Even in this modern era, the River Ganges is considered as a holy mother and having a bath in this holy river releases all sins, according to Hindu faith. Local people bathe in its water daily, although visitors are not advised to try this as most of the water in urban areas is heavily polluted! The river gets water from melting snow of the great Himalayas.



Down south , the main rivers are Periyar , Bharathapuzha, Chaliyar and Pamba in Kerala, Bhavani River in Tamil Nadu, Krishna River in Andhra Pradesh, and Bhima River in Karnataka. South Indian Rivers are fairly dry during summer, but they are a beautiful sight to watch during the Monsoon. The monsoon season is more obvious in the state of Kerala during early June till late August.

The Rivers, related culture, and monsoon - all these could be an exciting experience to the visitor!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.8 Conjunctions

This grammar lesson will give you a insight into the use of Hindi conjunctions - little words that link words or phrases together. You've already learned a lot of them without realizing, today is all about identifying them.

After grammar we'll spice things up about as our Culture section explores the hot world of Indian spices.

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words like *"and, so, for, yet"* that link two words, phrases or clauses together. By this stage in the course you will have already learned and used many of them, but today we're going to give you a list of conjunctions for you to refer to in the future.

और
aura
And

या
yā
Or

अगर/ यदि
agara/ yadi
If

लेकिन/ परन्तु
lēkina/ parantu
But

क्योंकि
kyōnki
Because

जब तक
jaba taka
Until

से
sē
Than / Since

यानि
yāni
That is/i.e.

तो
tō
So

Substitutes

You may have noticed that there are two Hindi substitutes for "if" and "but". Normally the word "agara" is used for "if". "yadi" is the Sanskrit version of "if".

Similarly, for "but" , the common word is "lēkina" , and "parantu" is a more 'Sanskritised' word for 'but'.

Examples

Here are some examples of conjunctions being used within sentences. See if you can spot the conjunctions.

सीता और गीता गा रहीं हैं ।
sītā aura gītā gā rahī̃ haĩ
Seetha and Geetha are singing

नीला या काला?
nīlā yā kālā?
Blue or Black?

लेकिन मुझे यह पसंद नहीं है ।
lēkina mujhē yaha pasanda nahī̃ hai
But I don't like this

अगर बारिश होगी तो मत जाना ।
agara bāriśa hōgī tō mata jānā
Don't go if it rains.

हम सिनेमा जा रहे हैं क्योंकि एक नई फिल्म है
hama sinēmā jā rahē haĩ kyonki ēka naĩ filma hai
We are going to the cinema because there is a new film

मैं इंतज़ार करूंगी जब तक आप तयार हो रहे हैं
maĩ intzāra karungī jaba taka āpa tayāra ho rahe haĩ
I will wait until you are ready

कुरता सुन्दर है लेकिन ज़्यादा महँगा है!
kurtā sundara hai lēkina zyādā mahā̃gā hai!
The shirt is beautiful but too expensive!

मुझे दो चाय और एक कॉफ़ी दीजिये
mujhē dō chāy aura ēka kafī dijīyē
Please give me two teas and a coffee

अगर आपको चाहिए तो मुझे बताइए
agara āpakō chāhiē tō mujhē batāiē
If you want it then tell me

Culture: Spices

India is widely known for its rich variety of spices. The right selection of quality spices is the secret of India's exquisite curry dishes.

Some of the most prolific spices include black pepper, cinnamon, cloves, cardamom, bay leaves, asafetida, cumin seeds, mustard seeds, fenugreek seeds, dried mango powder, nutmegs, red chilies, ginger, black salt, dried coriander (dhaniyaa), turmeric, paprika, sesame and so on. Nut varieties like cashew nut and almonds are also used to flavor dishes. Beware of this if you have a nut allergy!



“Garam masala”, a combination of cinnamon, cloves, cardamom and black pepper is a commonly used spice powder in almost all Indian Curries. Different combinations like cumin and coriander, cumin and fenugreek or cumin and red chilies give different flavors to the food. There are some standard blends of spices like garam masaala, korma masaala, or biriyani masaala. But anyone can try any combination of these spices to suit their tastes.

Spices accelerate digestion and improve immune resistance. It could be the reason the older Indian generation insisted upon adding spices to daily food. Turmeric, which is an essential ingredient of any Indian curry, is a very good antiseptic. A mixture of crushed ginger and garlic with a little bit of salt will drive away indigestion. In olden days, an average Indian woman was able to cure minor ailments of family members with the spice stock in her kitchen!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.8 Conjunctions

This grammar lesson will give you a insight into the use of Hindi conjunctions - little words that link words or phrases together. You've already learned a lot of them without realizing, today is all about identifying them.

After grammar we'll spice things up about as our Culture section explores the hot world of Indian spices.

Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words like *"and, so, for, yet"* that link two words, phrases or clauses together. By this stage in the course you will have already learned and used many of them, but today we're going to give you a list of conjunctions for you to refer to in the future.

और
aura
And

या
yā
Or

अगर/ यदि
agara/ yadi
If

लेकिन/ परन्तु
lēkina/ parantu
But

क्योंकि
kyōnki
Because

जब तक
jaba taka
Until

से
sē
Than / Since

यानि
yāni
That is/i.e.

तो
tō
So

Substitutes

You may have noticed that there are two Hindi substitutes for "if" and "but". Normally the word "agara" is used for "if". "yadi" is the Sanskrit version of "if".

Similarly, for "but" , the common word is "lēkina" , and "parantu" is a more 'Sanskritised' word for 'but'.

Examples

Here are some examples of conjunctions being used within sentences. See if you can spot the conjunctions.

सीता और गीता गा रहीं हैं ।
sītā aura gītā gā rahī̃ haĩ
Seetha and Geetha are singing

नीला या काला?
nīlā yā kālā?
Blue or Black?

लेकिन मुझे यह पसंद नहीं है ।
lēkina mujhē yaha pasanda nahī̃ hai
But I don't like this

अगर बारिश होगी तो मत जाना ।
agara bāriśa hōgī tō mata jānā
Don't go if it rains.

हम सिनेमा जा रहे हैं क्योंकि एक नई फिल्म है
hama sinēmā jā rahē haĩ kyonki ēka naĩ filma hai
We are going to the cinema because there is a new film

मैं इंतज़ार करूंगी जब तक आप तयार हो रहे हैं
maĩ intzāra karungī jaba taka āpa tayāra ho rahe haĩ
I will wait until you are ready

कुरता सुन्दर है लेकिन ज़्यादा महँगा है!
kurtā sundara hai lēkina zyādā mahā̃gā hai!
The shirt is beautiful but too expensive!

मुझे दो चाय और एक कॉफ़ी दीजिये
mujhē dō chāy aura ēka kafī dijīyē
Please give me two teas and a coffee

अगर आपको चाहिए तो मुझे बताइए
agara āpakō chāhiē tō mujhē batāiē
If you want it then tell me

Culture: Spices

India is widely known for its rich variety of spices. The right selection of quality spices is the secret of India's exquisite curry dishes.

Some of the most prolific spices include black pepper, cinnamon, cloves, cardamom, bay leaves, asafetida, cumin seeds, mustard seeds, fenugreek seeds, dried mango powder, nutmegs, red chilies, ginger, black salt, dried coriander (dhaniyaa), turmeric, paprika, sesame and so on. Nut varieties like cashew nut and almonds are also used to flavor dishes. Beware of this if you have a nut allergy!



“Garam masala”, a combination of cinnamon, cloves, cardamom and black pepper is a commonly used spice powder in almost all Indian Curries. Different combinations like cumin and coriander, cumin and fenugreek or cumin and red chilies give different flavors to the food. There are some standard blends of spices like garam masaala, korma masaala, or biriyani masaala. But anyone can try any combination of these spices to suit their tastes.

Spices accelerate digestion and improve immune resistance. It could be the reason the older Indian generation insisted upon adding spices to daily food. Turmeric, which is an essential ingredient of any Indian curry, is a very good antiseptic. A mixture of crushed ginger and garlic with a little bit of salt will drive away indigestion. In olden days, an average Indian woman was able to cure minor ailments of family members with the spice stock in her kitchen!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.9 Expressing "I have to"

I have to!

Today we're going to cover compulsions and obligations in Hindi. In conversation with people we often talk about what we should do and what we have to do. People may also tell you that you definitely should go to some places and in India you HAVE to go to the Taj Mahal!
There are a few ways of saying this in Hindi so we'll look at them one at a time and look at lots of examples to help cement our new skills. When looking at examples try to identify each element of what you have just learned as well as gender agreement and plural agreements.

We'll also be finding out about music in India.

I should...

First we are going to cover what are called internal compulsions. This means that it is a force within us that is telling us we have to do something. In English we express this by saying "I should". This is the weakest form of obligation.

In Hindi we add one word onto the end of sentences to convey this.

चाहिए
chāhi-ē
Should

The way we add this to sentences is really very simple. All "should" sentences follow this pattern:

subject + को *ko* + infinitive verb + चाहिए*chahi-e*

The infinitive verb means we keep the verb in its full form in the sentence. So if देखना *dekhana* is to see then should see is देखना चाहिए *dekhana chahi-e.* We add a को *ko* after the subject so we can tell it is the person or thing doing the action. So if we were going to say "I should see the film" it would be:

मुझको फिल्म देखना चाहिए
mujhakō filma dēkhanā chāhi-ē
I should see the film

Remember that मुझको *mujhako* can be shortened to मुझे *mujhe*.

Here are some more examples of internal compulsions. Make sure you are completely familiar with the structure before moving onto the next section on external compulsions and obligations.

आपको चाय पीनी चाहिए
āpakō chāya pīnī chāhi-ē
You should drink tea

मुझे जाना चाहिए
mujhē jānā chāhi-ē
I should go

उसको होटल मैनेजर से पूछना चाहिए
uskō hōtala mainējara sē puchhnā chāhi-ē
He/She should ask the Hotel Manager

हमको हिंदी में बोलना चाहिए

hamakō hindī mē bōlnā chāhi-ē
We should speak in Hindi

आपको कोल्कता जाना चाहिए
āpakō kōlkatā jānā chāhi-ē
You should go to Kolkata

मुझे कपडे धोबी को भेजने चाहिए
mujhē kapṛē dhōbī kō bhējanē chāhi-ē
I should send my clothes to the washer-man

मुझे भारत वापास आना चाहिए
mujhē bharata vāpāsa ānā chāhi-ē
I should go back to India

I have to...

The next degree of compulsion we have are called**external compulsions**. They are called this because we feel like we are being made to do something by an outside force. For example we might say "I have to go and meet my mother". The external compulsion here is that we are meeting our mother and there may be consequences if we don't go but not necessarily big ones.

We're going to use a familiar verb to help express this in Hindi...

होना
hōnā
To be

So in the present tense we would use all of our words for I am, you are etc. to express an external compulsion. But wait, whats the difference between saying I have to go home and I am going home? If we were to just use हूँ, है or हैं by themselves then it would be really confusing! So we have to make sure all external compulsions follow the same pattern as above:

subject + को *ko* + infinitive verb + होना*hona*

So the two sentences above would be:

मैं घर जाता हूँ
maĩ ghara jātā hũ
I am going home

मुझे घर जाना है
mujhē ghara jānā hai
I have to go home

Remember to be careful with agreement when using a postposition! Notice how the form ofहोना *hona* changes when को *ko* is added. This is because postpositions like को *ko* always prevents anything that comes after it from agreeing with what comes before it.

Lets look at some further examples of this and remember to pay close attention to the agreement in the sentence.

मुझे माँ से मिलना है
mujhē mā sē milanā hai
I have to meet my mother

आपको बोलना है
āpakō bōlanā hai
You have to speak

हमको टिकट खरीदना है
hamakō tickata kharidanā hai
We have to buy tickets

मुझे उसके साथ जाना है

mujhē uskē sātha jānā hai
I have to go with him/her

उसको कुछ खाना है
uskō kuchha khānā hai
He/She has to eat something

मेरे पति को हॉस्पिटल जाना है
mērē pati kō hospitala jānā hai
My husband has to go to hospital

मुझे आराम करना है
mujhē ārāma karnā hai
I have to rest

I must!

Finally we have look at**external obligations**. In English we can think of these as saying "I must do it!" . In Hindi however they are used to express a greater degree of obligations, you absolutely HAVE to do it.

Again we are going to use just one verb to help us with this.

पड़ना
paṛanā
To have to

We're going to slot this into exactly the same formula as before to make sentences.

subject + को *ko* + infinitive verb +पड़ना *paṛanā* + auxiliary verb

So the sentence "I must meet her" would be translated as:

मुझे उस से मिलना पड़ता है
mujhē usa sē milanā paṛatā hai
I must meet him/her

है *hai* is now back to being used as an auxiliary verb.

मुझे अभी जाना पड़ता है
mujhē abhī jānā paṛatā hai
I must go right now

आपको ताज महल देखना पड़ता है
āpakō tāja mahala dēkhanā paṛatā hai
You must see the Taj Mahal

मुझे और सीखना पड़ता है
mujhē aura sīkhanā paṛatā hai
I must learn more

आपको यह किताब पढ़ना पड़ती है
āpakō yaha kitāba padhanā paṛatī hai
You must read this book

उसको अभी पानी पीना पड़ता है
uskō abhī pānī pīnā paṛatā hai
He/She has to drink water right now

Culture: Music in India

India is full of new and unfamiliar sounds. From temple bells to autorickshaws pumping out Bollywood hits music is an integral part of daily life. Indian classical music has rightfully earned it's place in the world as is renowned for it's beautiful rhythms and

improvisations. The famous sitar player Ravi Shanker, who taught George Harrison and collaborated with people from the Beatles to Yehudi Menuhin.

South India has its own distinctive form of classical music known as Karnatic music. The modes featured are fairly similar to northern classical music but it has a completely different aesthetic and quality. Along with music comes dance. The south Indian style of ***Bharatnatyam*** is famous across the world and performances occur all over India.

Musical traditions in every state. From the Bauls of Bengal who sing devotional songs accompanied by minimal music to the Bopas of Rajasthan who wander telling epic stories by memory. It's certainly a big pool to jump into, but you'll be glad you have so make sure you go to a couple of musical performances.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.10 Food and Drink

The writing section of this lesson is a tasty one! You'll learn how to write and recognize food-related words.

Food and Drink

We'll start today's writing lesson with a look at some measurements of time, the words that we left unwritten for you in our last writing lesson. Check your attempt against the correct answers below. How did you go?

दिन
dina
Day

हफ़्ता
haftā
Week

महीना
mahīnā
Month

साल
sāla
Year

New Vocabulary

Today we're going to introduce you to a collection of vocabulary related to different kinds of food and drinks.

कॉफ़ी षोप
kôfī ṣōpa
Coffee shop

रेस्टोरेंट
rēsṭōrēṇṭa
Restaurant

कैफ़े
kaifē
Cafe

खाना
khānā
Meal

चाय
cāya
Tea

कॉफ़ी
kôfī
Coffee



Here are some more words related to food:

नाश्ता
nāśtā
Breakfast

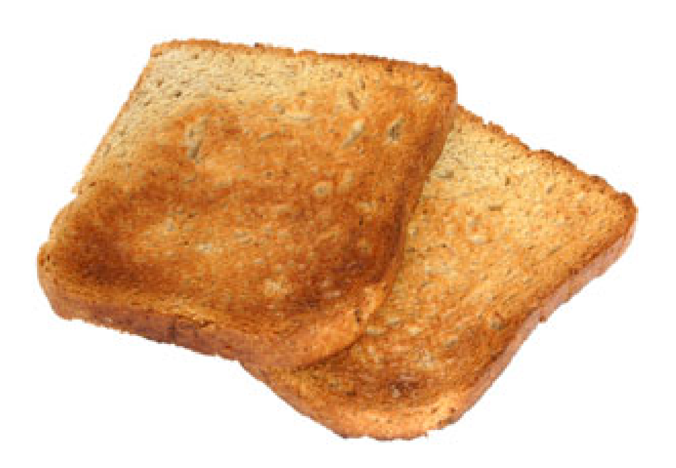
दोपहर का खाना
dōpahara kā khānā
Lunch

रात का खाना
rāta kā khānā
Dinner

सैंडविच
saiṇḍavica
Sandwich

ब्रेड/रोटी
brēḍa/rōṭī
Bread

दूध
dūdha
Milk



Homework

Once again, we'll leave you with a few words to translate on your own. See how you go, and we'll have the answers for you in our next writing lesson.

phal	*Fruit*
sabjee	*Vegetable*
murgee	*Chicken*
maaMs	*Meat*

---

bāda mẽ milatē haĩ

बाद में मिलते हैं।
See you later

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.11 Beach Related Words

Today we're going to hit the beach, with a bunch of beach-related words in our writing lesson.

Beach Related Words

A Review

Here’s the list that we left you with in our last lesson. How did you go?

फल
phala
Fruit

सब्ज़ी
sabzī
Vegetable

मुर्गी
murgī
Chicken

मांस
mā̃sa
Meat

Let's Hit the Beach!

Here are some words which are related to beach!

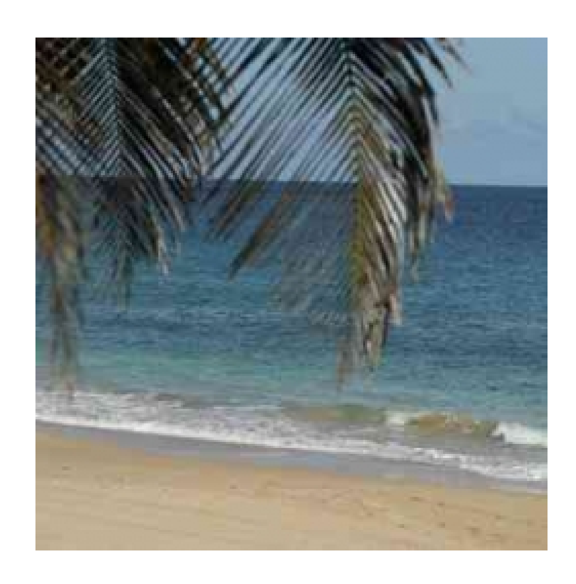
समुंदर
samundara
Sea

आकाश
ākāśa
Sky

रेत
rēta
Sand

तैरना
tairanā
To Swim

मछली
machalī
Fish



Some more words related to water

हिन्द महा सागर
hinda mahā sāgara
The Indian Ocean

अरब सागर
araba sāgara
The Arabian Sea

तालाब
tālāba
Pond

झील
jhīla
Lake

पानी
pānī
Water



Here's a list of popular coastal cities in India. We'll leave it with you to figure out how to write them. You can see the answers in our next lesson.

chennai	*Chennai*
thiruvananthapuram	*Trivandrum*
koShikod	*Calicut*
mumbai	*Mumbai*

govaa	*Goa*

Good luck with your writing! We’ll see how you went in our next writing lesson where we'll review the answers.

śubha kāmanāyẽ !
शुभ कामनायें ।
Good luck!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.12 Verbs and Nouns

Let's get active! Here you'll be able to talk about some lovely outdoor settings and what you could do there by using these place names and some more basic verbs.

Verbs and Nouns

First a Review

So how did you go writing those popular coastal city names? You can check your answers with the table below. Don't worry if you found it pretty hard. Remember that you're still learning!

चेन्नै
cēnnai
Chennai

तिरुवनन्तपुरम
tiruvanantapurama
Trivandrum

कोषिकोड
kōṣikōḍa
Calicut

मुम्बै
mumbai
Mumbai

गोवा
gōvā
Goa

Useful Verbs

Okay, now we're moving right on to verbs! These ones will be particularly useful for you, especially if you have the chance to play with some Indian children.

उठना
uṭhanā
To get up

दौड़ना
dauṛanā
To run

खेलना
khēlanā
To play

आना
ānā
To come

जाना
jānā
To go

उतरना

utaranā
To get down



Nouns

Now back to the nouns, those lovely words that don't change form. This list is describing things found in nature

जंगल
jangala
Forest

रेगिस्तान
rēgistāna
Desert

पहाड़
pahāṛa
Mountain

पर्वत
parvata
Hill

घाटी
ghāṭī
Valley

बगीचा
bagīcā
Garden



A Little Homework

Here's a list of words for you to try writing for your homework. We'll give you the answers in our next lesson.

dharvaazaa	*Door*
dheevaar	*Wall*
snaanghar	*Bathroom*
khidkee	*Window*



Good luck and we'll see how you went in our next writing lesson.

āśā hai phira milanē kī
आशा है फिर मिलने की ।

Hope to meet you again!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

5.13 Fruits and Vegetables

We've talked a bit about the hot and spicy flavours of India on our jouney so far and of course, what better to accompany spices than vegetables? They're our focus for this writing section. Put them together and you almost have a tasty Indian curry dish!

Fruits and Vegetables

Homework Check

Let's see how your answers from the previous lessons 'homework' compare to the correct ones here:

दरवाजा
daravājā
Door

दीवार
dīvāra
Wall

स्नानघर
snānaghara
Bathroom

खिड़की
khiṛakī
Window

Tasty Vegetables!

Unlike Western countries, Indian meals do not rely heavily on meat. In fact many meals are vegetarian. Below is a list of some very common ones, you'll spot these easily on a restaurant menu.

गाजर
gājara
Carrot

टमाटर
ṭamāṭara
Tomato

आलू
ālū
Potato

गोबी
gōbī
Cauli flower

पत्तागोभी
pattāgōbhī
Cabbage



Shall we try some fruits now?

केला
kēlā
Banana

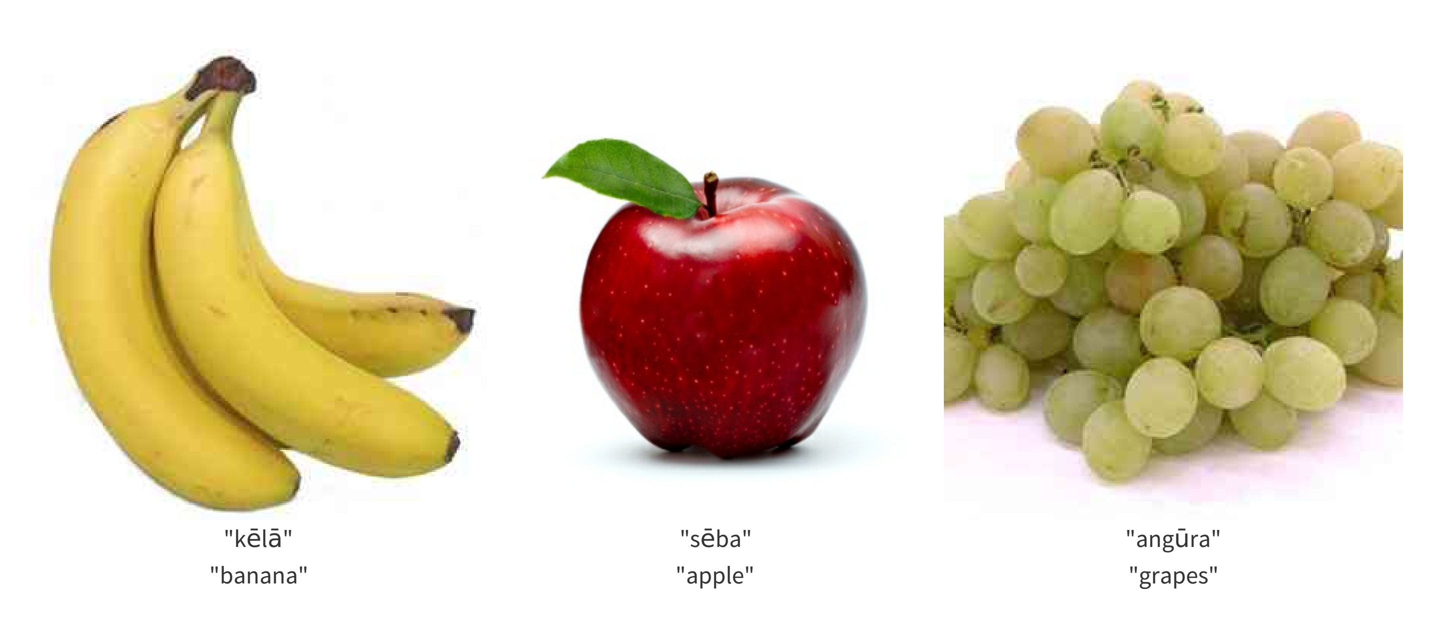
आम
āma
Mango

सेब
sēba
Apple

संतरा
santarā
Orange

अंगूर
angūra
Grapes

अनार
anāra
Pomegranate



"kēlā"
"banana"

"sēba"
"apple"

"angūra"
"grapes"

Practice Time!

Now here is a list of dairy products for you to practice with. We'll give the answers in our next lesson.

dhooDh	*Milk*
makhan	*Butter*
paneer	*Cottage cheese*
dhahee	*Yogurt*

Best of luck with your homework task! We'll check the answers in the next lesson. Until then, keep up the practice!

तब तक अच्छा अभ्यास करें ! taba taka acchā abhyāsa karẽ !

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.1 A Birthday Celebration

Get your party outfit ready, it's time to head to a traditional Indian birthday party. Decide what to buy and find out who's invited to the celebration.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

हम्हें मेरी माताजी के लिये एक तोफ़ा चाहिये।
hamhẽ mērī mātājī kē liyē ēka tōfā cāhiyē.
We need to buy a present for my mum.

Nikita

वह क्यों?
vaha kyō̃?
Why's that?

Rohan

हम शनिवार को उनके जनमदिन पर आमंत्रित हैं।
hama śanivāra kō unakē janamadina para āmantrita haĩ.
She's invited us to her birthday party on Saturday.

Nikita

क्या यह एक बडा उत्सव होगा?
kyā yaha ēka baḍā utsava hōgā?
Is it a big party?

Rohan

बेशक। मेरे सब रिश्तेदार वहाँ पर आयेंगे ।
bēśaka. mērē saba riśtēdāra vahā̃ para āyēngē .
Definitely. The whole family is coming.

Nikita

मुझे एक अच्छा प्रभाव बनाना है।
mujhē ēka acchā prabhāva banānā hai.
I want to make a good impression.

Rohan

तुम कोई चिंता मत करो।
tuma kōī cintā mata karō
Don't worry.

Nikita

क्या हम उनके लिये एक फूलों का गुलदस्ता ले जायें?
kyā hama unakē liyē ēka phūlō̃ kā Guladastā lē jāyẽ?
Should we get her a bunch of flowers?

Rohan

एक व्यन्जन की किताब ज्यादा ठीक रहेगी।
ēka vyanjana kī kitāba jyādā ṭhīka rahēgī.
A cook-book would be better.

Nikita

क्यों?
kyō̃?
Why?

Rohan

वह एक भयानक रसोइया है।
vaha ēka bhayānaka rasōiyā hai.
She is a terrible cook.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

शुभ दिन
śubha dina
Good day!

कृपया बताएं?
kṛpayā batāē̃?
Yes, please?

मैं एक पार्सल अमेरिका भेजना चाहती हूँ
maĩ ēka pārsala amērikā bhējanā cāhatī hū̃
I'd like to send a parcel to America.

कृपया इसे तराज़ू पर रखिए
kṛpayā isē tarāzū para rakhiē
Please put it on the scales.

क्या यह बहुत भारी है?
kyā yaha bahuta bhārī hai?
Is it very heavy?

इसका वजन तीन किलो से कम है और इस लिए इसे भेजने का मूल्य एक हज़ार रुपए होगा
isakā vajana tīna kilō sē kama hai aura isa liē isē bhējanē kā mūlya ēka hazāra rupaē hōgā
It's just under 3 kilos and therefore costs Rs 1000.

वह ठीक है
vaha ṭhīka hai
That's fine.

पार्सल के अंदर क्या है?
pārsala kē andara kyā hai?
What's in the parcel?

एक मदिरा की बोटल और कपडे
ēka madirā kī bōṭala aura kapaḍē
A bottle of wine and clothes.

मुझे उम्मीद है बोटल ठीक से बंद है
mujhē ummīda hai bōṭala ṭhīka sē banda hai
I hope the bottle is wrapped up well.

सब ठीक है?
saba ṭhīka hai?
Everything fine?

एक सभा

ēka sabhā
A party

अवसर
avasara
Occasion

वह एक बडा आलू है
vaha ēka baḍā ālū hai
That is a big potato.

मेरे सब दोस्त वहाँ पर आएंगे
mērē saba dōsta vahā̃ para āēngē
All my friends will come there.

दोस्त
dōsta
Friends

आप कोई चिंता मत करें । मैं ठीक हूँ
āpa kōī cintā mata karẽ . maĩ ṭhīka hū̃
Don't worry. I'm fine.

क्या हम उन के लिए एक थैली टोफ़ी ले जाएंगे?
kyā hama una kē liē ēka thailī ṭōfī lē jāēngē?
Shall we get her a bag of candy?

क्या हम उन के लिए एक लाल मदिरा की बोटल ले जायें?
kyā hama una kē liē ēka lāla madirā kī bōṭala lē jāyẽ?
Shall we get her a bottle of red wine?

बेहतरीन
bēhatarīna
Excellent

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very good!

हम्हें मेरी माँ (माताजी) के लोए एक व्यंजन किताब चाहिए
hamhẽ mērī mā̃ (mātājī) kē lōē ēka vyañjana kitāba cāhiē
We need a cookbook for my mother.

हम उनके घर पर आमंत्रित हैं
hama unakē ghara para āmantrita haĩ
We are invited to her house.

वह एक बडी बोटल है
vaha ēka baḍī bōṭala hai
That is a big bottle.

क्या हम उनके लिए एक कोफ़ी खरीदें?
kyā hama unakē liē ēka kōfī kharīdẽ?
Shall we buy her a coffee?

अलविदा ! जल्दी मिलते हैं
alavidā ! jaldī milatē haĩ
Farwell! See you later!

Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.2 Meeting the Family

It's a family affair as you participate in a meet and greet with Indian relatives. Learn how to ask for someone's name, and make inquiries as to who someone is; just try not to mix up who's who!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या मैं परिचय करूँ?
kyā maĩ paricaya karū̃?
Shall I make the introductions?

यह हैं मेरी माताजी, निर्मला शर्मा
yaha haĩ mērī mātājī, nirmalā śarmā
This is my mother Nirmala Sharma

Nikita

आप से मिलकर खुशी हुई।
āpa sē milakara khuśī huī.
Pleased to meet you.

Rohan

वे हैं मेरे पिताजी, सुशील शर्मा।
vē haĩ mērē pitājī, suśīla śarmā.
Over there is my father Sushil Sharma.

Nikita

मुझे उम्मीद है मैं सब नाम याद रखूँगी।
mujhē ummīda hai maĩ saba nāma yāda rakhū̃gī.
I hope I will remember all the names!

Rohan

यह अब तक सब नहीं हैं।
yaha aba taka saba nahī̃ haĩ.
That’s not all yet.

वे लम्बे बालोंवाले मेरे चाचाजी हैं।
vē lambē bālō̃vālē mērē cācājī haĩ.
The long-haired guy is my uncle.

Nikita

उनका नाम क्या है?
unakā nāma kyā hai?
What’s his name?

Rohan

उनका नाम सुनिल शर्मा है।
unakā nāma sunila śarmā hai.
His name is Sunil Sharma.

Nikita

और वह कौन है?

aura vaha kauna hai?
And who is that?

Rohan

वह मेरी छोटी भतीजी सुजाता है।
vaha mērī chōṭī bhatījī sujātā hai.
This is Sujata, my little niece.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं हूँ निकिता
maĩ hū̃ nikitā
I'm Nikita

मैं हूँ रोहन
maĩ hū̃ rōhana
I'm Rohan

हम्हें मेरी मताजी के लिए एक तोफ़ा चाहिए
hamhẽ mērī matājī kē liē ēka tōfā cāhiē
We need to buy a present for my mother.

वह क्यों?
vaha kyõ?
Why's that?

हम शनिवार को उनके जनमदिन पर आमंत्रित हैं
hama śanivāra kō unakē janamadina para āmantrita haĩ
She's invited us to her birthday party on Saturday.

क्या यह एक बडा अनुष्ठान होगा?
kyā yaha ēka baḍā anuṣṭhāna hōgā?
Is it a big party?

बेशक ।मेरे सब रिश्तेदार वहाँ पर आएंगे
bēśaka . mērē saba riśtēdāra vahā̃ para āēngē
Definitely. The whole family is coming.

मुझे एक अच्छी छाप लगानी है
mujhē ēka acchī chāpa lagānī hai
I want to make a good impression.

आप कोई चिंता मत करें
āpa kōī cintā mata karẽ
Don't worry.

क्या हम उन के लिए एक फ़ूलों का गुल्दस्ता ले जायें?
kyā hama una kē liē ēka fūlõ kā guldastā lē jāyẽ?
Should we get her a bunch of flowers?

एक व्यंजन की किताब ज़्यादा ठीक रहेगी
ēka vyañjana kī kitāba zyādā ṭhīka rahēgī
A cook-book would be better.

क्यों?
kyõ?

Why?

वह एक भयानक रसोइया है
vaha ēka bhayānaka rasōiyā hai
She is a terrible cook.

जनम दिन मुबारक
janama dina mubāraka
Happy Birthday

मुझे उम्मीद है मैं सब सामग्री याद रखूँगा
mujhē ummīda hai maĩ saba sāmagrī yāda rakhū̃gā
I hope I will remember all the ingredients.

शब्द
śabda
Words

वह नीलावाला
vaha nīlāvālā
The blue one

वे लम्बे बालोंवली मेरी चाचीजी हैं
vē lambē bālō̃valī mērī cācījī haĩ
The long-haired woman is my aunt.

चाचीजी
cācījī
Aunt

दादीजी
dādījī
Grandma

दादाजी
dādājī
Grandpa

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Very good!

मेरा
mērā
My

तुम्हारा
tumhārā
Your

उनका
unakā
His/her (polite) or their

उसका
usakā
His/her (casual/friendly)

यह उसकी गाड़ी है
yaha usakī gāṛī hai
That’s his car.

यह उनका तोफ़ा है

yaha unakā tōfā hai
That is his present.

यह उनका तोफ़ा है
yaha unakā tōfā hai
That is her present.

वह मेरी चाची है
vaha mērī cācī hai
That is my aunt.

अलविदा
alavidā
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.3 Flirting

What better destination on a first date than the Diwali Festival! With fire-crackers in hand, get ready to be wowed by the late night festivities, and hopefully your date!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

आप कब से मुंबई में हैं?
āp kab sē mumbai mē̃ haĩ?
How long have you been in Mumbai so far?

Nikita

लगभग दस दिन से।
Lag-bhag das din sē.
For about ten days.

मुझे यहाँ अच्छा लगता है।
mujhē yahā̃ acchā lag-tā hai.
I like it to be here/I like when I am here

Rohan

इससे मुझे प्रसन्न्ता हुई।
Is-sē mujhē prasanntā huī.
I'm glad to hear it.

Nikita

मैं अभी और बहुत कुछ देखना पसन्द करूंगी।
maĩ abhī aur bahut kuch dēkh-nā pa-sand karūngī.
There's still so much I want to see.

Rohan

क्या आप मेरे साथ कल दीवाली के मेले में चलना पसन्द करेंगी?
kyā āp mērē sāth kal dīvālī ke mēlē mē̃ ch-lanā pasand karēngī?
Would you like to go to the Diwali festival with me tomorrow?

Nikita

उम्म्म्, हाँ क्यों नहीं?
ummm, hā̃ kyō̃ nahī̃?
Hmm, yes, why not?

Rohan

मैं आप को लेने आ सकता हूँ।
maĩ āp kō lēnē ā sakatā hū̃.
I can pick you up.

Nikita

जरूर, लेकिन आप का नाम क्या है?
jarūr, lēkin āpa kā nām kyā hai?
That would be nice. By the way, what's your name?

Rohan

क्षमा कीजिये, मेरा नाम विक्रम है।

kṣamā kījiyē, mērā nāma vikrama hai.
Sorry, my name is Vikram.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं हूँ रोहन
maĩ hū̃ rōhan
I'm Rohan

क्या मैं परिचय कराऊँ? ये हैं मेरी माताजी ,निर्मला शर्मा
kyā maĩ pari-cheya karāū̃? yē haĩ mērī matājī Nirmalā Sharmā
Shall I make the introductions? She is my mother Nirmala Sharma

आप से मिलकर अच्छा लगा
Āp sē mil-kar acchā lagā
Pleased to meet you.

वे हैं मेरे पिताजी , सुशील शर्मा
vē haĩ mērē pitājī , sushil sharma
Over there is my father Sushil Sharma.

मुझे उम्मीद है, मैं सब नाम याद रखूँगी
mujhē um-meed hai , maĩ sab nām yād rakhū̃gī
I hope I will remember all the names!

ये अब तक सब नहीं हैं । वे लम्बे बालोंवाले मेरे चाचाजी हैं ।
yē ab tak sab nahī̃ haĩ . vē lambē bālõ-vālē mērē cha-cha jī haĩ .
That's not all yet. The long-haired guy is my uncle.

उनका नाम क्या हैं?
unakā nām kyā haĩ?
What's his name?

उनका नाम हैं सुनील शर्मा
unakā nām haĩ sunil sharma
His name is Sunil Sharma.

और वहाॅ कौन है?
Aur vaha(n) kaun hai?
And who is there?

वह मेरी छोटी भतीजी सुजाता है
vaha mērī chōṭī bhatījī sujātā hai
She is Sujata, my little niece.

बहुत सुन्दर
Bahut sundar
How pretty

आप कब तक इन्डिया में हैं?
āp kab tak inḍiyā mẽ haĩ?
How long are you going to be in India?

मुझे यह पसंद है
mujhē yah pasand hai
I like it

मुझे यह पसंद नहीं है
mujhē yah pasand nahī̃ hai
I don't like it

मुझे वहाँ पसंद है
mujhē vahā̃ pasand hai
I like it there.

क्या आप मेरे साथ कल टाउन-हाल में चलना पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āp mērē sāth kal town-haal mē̃ chal-nā pasand karēngī?
Would you like to go to town hall with me tomorrow?

मैं तुम्हें प्यार करता हूँ
maĩ tumhē̃ pyār karatā hū̃
I love you.

माफ़ी देना
māfī dēnā
Forgiveness

मुझे यह सुनकर दुःख हुआ
mujhē yah sunakar duḥkh huā
I'm sorry to hear that

क्षमा कीजिए
kṣamā kījiē
Excuse me (informal/casual)

माफ़ कीजिए, समय क्या हुआ है?
māfa kījiē, samaya kyā huā hai?
Excuse me, what's the time please?

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.4 The First Date

After the excitement of the Diwali festival and a first date, things have calmed down a bit and unfortunately 'cooled' down in the romance department. You've decided that maybe you haven't quite found your soul-mate and it's time to break the bad news!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

मुझे तुम्हारे साथ वक्त बिताने में आनन्द आता है।
mujhē tumhārē sātha vakta bitānē mẽ ānanda ātā hai.
I really enjoy spending time with you.

Nikita

मुझे दीवाली का मेला सच में पसन्द आया।
mujhē dīvālī kā mēlā saca mẽ pasanda āyā.
I liked the Diwali festival very much.

Rohan

क्या तुम अब सैर पर चलना पसन्द करोगी?
kyā tuma aba saira para calanā pasanda karōgī?
Would you like to go for a walk?

Nikita

बिलकुल नहीं, मैं काफ़ी थकी हुई हूँ।
bilakula nahī̃, maĩ kāfī thakī huī hū̃.
I'd rather not. I'm fairly tired.

Rohan

क्या मैं थोडी देर के लिये अन्दर आ सकता हूँ?
kyā maĩ thōḍī dēra kē liyē andara ā sakatā hū̃?
Can I come in for a little while?

Nikita

मुझे नहीं पता।
mujhē nahī̃ patā.
I don't know.

Rohan

क्या तुम मुझे पसन्द नहीं करती?
kyā tuma mujhē pasanda nahī̃ karatī?
Don't you like me?

Nikita

तुम अच्छे हो, लेकिन बस इतना ही।
tuma acchē hō, lēkina basa itanā hī.
You are nice, but that's all.

Rohan

अच्छा ठीक है, बाद में मिलते हैं।
acchā ṭhīka hai, bāda mẽ milatē haĩ.
Ok then, see you later.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

शुभ दिन !
śubha dina !
Good day!

आप कब से इन्डिया में ही हैं?
āpa kaba sē inḍiyā mẽ hī haĩ?
How long have you been in India so far?

लगभग चार हफ़्ते । मुझे यह बहुत पसंद है
lagabhaga cāra haftē . mujhē yaha bahuta pasanda hai
For about four weeks. I'm enjoying it so much.

इस से मुझे प्रसन्नता हुई
isa sē mujhē prasannatā huī
I'm glad to hear that.

मैं अभी और बहुत कुछ देखना पसंद करूँगी
maĩ abhī aura bahuta kucha dēkhanā pasanda karū̃gī
There's still so much I want to see.

क्या आप मेरे साथ कल दीवाली मेले में चलना पसंद करेंगी?
kyā āpa mērē sātha kala dīvālī mēlē mẽ calanā pasanda karēngī?
Would you like to go to the Diwali festival with me tomorrow?

ममम.. हाँ, क्यों नहीं?
mamama.. hā̃, kyõ nahī̃?
Hmm, yes, why not?

मैं आप को लेने आ सकता हूँ
maĩ āpa kō lēnē ā sakatā hū̃
I can pick you up.

ज़रूर, लेकिन आपका नाम क्या है, फ़िर भी?
zarūra, lēkina āpakā nāma kyā hai, fira bhī?
That would be nice. By the way, what's your name?

क्षमा कीजिए, मेरा नाम विक्रम है
kṣamā kījiē, mērā nāma vikrama hai
Sorry, my name is Vikram.

मेरे पास वक्त है
mērē pāsa vakta hai
I have time.

मेरे पास बहुत सा वक्त है । मेरे पास काफ़ी समय है ।
mērē pāsa bahuta sā vakta hai . mērē pāsa kāfī samaya hai .
I have lots of time.

मुझे सच में होटेल पसंद है
mujhē saca mẽ hōṭēla pasanda hai
I really like the hotel.

मुझे भोजनालय सच में पसंद है
mujhē bhōjanālaya saca mẽ pasanda hai
I really like the restaurant.

मैं सैर पर जाना पसंद करूँगी
maĩ saira para jānā pasanda karū̃gī
I would like to go for a walk

मैं बुरी तरह थकी हूँ
maĩ burī taraha thakī hū̃
I'm terribly tired.

मैं थोडा सा थका हूँ
maĩ thōḍā sā thakā hū̃
I'm a little bit tired.

क्या तुम्हें बिस्कुट पसंद है?
kyā tumhẽ biskuṭa pasanda hai?
Do you like cookies?

क्या तुम्हें कलकत्ता पसंद है?
kyā tumhẽ Kalakattā pasanda hai?
Do you like Calcutta?

अब वक्त है कुछ मौज मस्ती का
aba vakta hai kucha mauja mastī kā
It's time to have some fun!

अच्छा कार्य !
acchā kārya !
Good work!

अलविदा
alavidā!
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.5 The Past

In this lesson, you'll learn how to express the past using some verbs you're already familiar with. Our culture section is all about family values, you'll gain a real insight into how families operate.

I went to the market

Now lets look at forming our simple past tense. In spite of its name, this can be fairly complicated. Whereas before we were using the present tense version of the verb and adding tha/the/thi/thin, here we have to change the verb. We do this by forming a past participle. Before we look at creating this however lets take another dive into looking at the verbs themselves.

Verbs - Being and Doing

As we have already discussed, verbs are being and doing words. This distinction between being and doing is very important as they form two distinct groups of verbs each of which have their own rules. So what exactly do we mean by being and doing words?

1. **Being words** are verbs which do not take a direct object. Examples include I go, I come, I sit, I arrive, I am. In grammatical terms we call these **intransitive verbs**.
2. **Doing words** are verbs that can take a direct object. Examples include I see *him,* I eat *food*, I love *her,* I do *this.* Objects (the words in italics) don't always appear in the sentence but that doesn't change the nature of the verb. In grammatical terms we these **transitive verbs**.

This is quite a lot to wrap your head around. In most dictionaries verbs are marked whether they are transitive or intransitive so don't worry if you cannot guess what type of verb a verb is. With practice you'll understand instinctively the difference.

Now lets look at how we use both of these types of verbs in the past tense, starting with intransitive verbs

Past Participles of Intransitive Verbs

पहुंचना
pahunchnā
To arrive

Phew! That was a lot of theory. Now lets look practically about how to form the past participle with being verbs. To make the past participle of any verb we simple use the following rule:

verb stem + आ / ई / ए / ईं *ā / ī / ē / īn*

As always we use the appropriate ending based on the number and gender of the subject. So, if we use the word for 'to arrive' in Hindi, we get the following transformations.

	Maculine	**Feminine**
I... मैं ***main***	पहुँच + आ = मैं पहुंचा ***main pahunchā***	पहुँच + ई = मैं पहुंची ***main pahunclī***
You... तुम ***tuma***	पहुंच + ए = तुम पहुंचे ***tum pahunchē***	पहुँच + ईं = तुम पहुंचीं ***tum pahuīnch***
You... आप ***apa***	पहुंच + ए = आप पहुंचे ***apā pahunchē***	पहुँच + ईं = आप पहुंचीं ***ā pahunchīn***
He/She/It... वह ***vaha***	पहुँच + आ = वह पहुंचा ***vaha pahunchā***	पहुँच + ई = वह पहुंची ***vaha pahuīch***
He/She/It... यह ***yaha***	पहुँच + आ = यह पहुंचा ***yaha pahunchā***	पहुँच + ई = यह पहुंची ***yaha pahuīch***

They... वे ***ve***	पहुंच + ए = वे पहुंचे ***ve pahunchē***	पहुँच + ईं = वे पहुंचीं ***ve pahuīnch***
They... ये ***ye***	पहुंच + ए = ये पहुंचे ***ye pahunchē***	पहुँच + ईं = ये पहुंचीं ***ye pahuīnch***
We... हम ***ham***	पहुंच + ए = हम पहुंचे ***ham pahunchē***	पहुँच + ईं = हम पहुंचीं ***ham pahuīnch***

Great, now lets look at these in context and see some more examples of being verbs.

हम दिल्ली में कल पहुंचे
hama dillī mē kala pahunchē
We arrived in Delhi yesterday

आज सुबह मैं बाजार गया
āja subaha maĩ bāzār gayā
This morning I went to the Bazaar

वह मेरे घर आई
vaha mēre ghara āī
She came to my home

Good work! Did you notice how the verb stem of jānā (to go) changes to ga in the past? There are four irregular verbs in the past tense in Hindi so pay extra attention to them! We'll cover the other three in the next section.

Transitive Verbs in the Past Tense

As we've seen transitive verbs are 'doing' verbs. They are verbs with relate to an object as well as a subject.

- The subject is the person/thing DOING the action
- The object is the person/thing having something DONE to it

The way we create the past participle for Doing words is exactly the same way that we created them for Being verbs. Lets look at the following example.

देखना
dēkhnā
To see

So to make the past participle of *dekhnā* we would just follow the same rules as set out above. So to say the word "saw" we would do the following:

देखना = देख + आ / ई / ए / ईं = देखा / देखी / देखे / देखीं
dekhnā = dekh + ā / ī / ē / īn = dekhā / dekhī / dekhē / dekhīn

Easy! So what is different you might be asking? Well lets look at what happens if we try to say "I saw her" in the same way as we did above.

मैं वह देखा main *vaha dekhā* = I She saw

If we treat transitive verbs the same as intransitive verbs then it is difficult to tell what is the subject and what is the object of the sentence. The above sentence could mean I saw her or She saw me. To get around this we use *ne* to mark the subject and *ko* to mark the object. Both of these are postpositions so we must use the correct pronoun form with them.

So if we want to say I saw her it would be:

मैंने उसको देखा
Maĩney uskō dēkhā
I saw her

And if we wanted to say she saw me:

उसने मुझको देखा
usnē mujhakō dēkhā

She saw me

If the object is not a living thing then we can skip out the ko. So if we wanted to say I saw the Taj Mahal, we would say:

मैंने ताज महल देखा
Maĩney tāja mahala dēkhā
I saw the Taj Mahal

Fantastic, now you can understand how to say sentences in the past tense! Here are some more examples to reinforce what we have just learned. Play close attention to the agreement in each sentence. Remember that since *ne* and *ko* are postposition, they stop anything which comes after it from agreeing with the Subject or Object.

कल मैंने फिल्म देखी (male or female)
kala maĩney filma dēkhī
Yesterday I saw a film

मैंने उसको कहा
Maĩney uskō kahā
I said to him/her

उसने मुझे एक साडी दी
usnē mujhē ēka sādī dī
He/She gave me a sari

हमने ज़्यादा चाय पीं
hamnē zyādā chāy pĩ
We drank too much tea

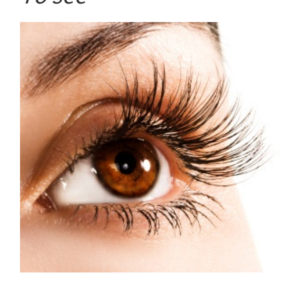
बच्चों ने फुटबॉल खेला
bacchōn nē futabāl khēlā
The children played Football

आपने बहुत मेहनत किया
āpanē bahuta mēhanata kiyā
You worked very hard

Now lets have a look at the past participles of common verbs. Make sure to note which verbs are transitive and which are intransitive.

"to see"

देखना
dēkhanā
To see



dēkhanā ***- "To see"***

dēkhā / dēkhī - "Saw"

This example shows that the form changes depending on the gender of the object.

मैंने देखा
Maĩney dēkhā
I saw (male)

मैं देखी
maĩ dēkhī
I saw (female)

तुम देखा
tuma dēkhā
You saw (informal)

आप देखा
āpa dēkhā

You saw (Polite)

उन्होंने देखा / देखी
unhōnnē dēkhā / dēkhī
They saw

उसने देखा/ देखी
usanē dēkhā/ dēkhī
He saw

उसने देखा / देखी
usanē dēkhā / dēkhī
She saw

"to go"

जाना
jānā
To go



jānā– **"To go"**

gayā, gayī, gayē- **"Went"**

मैं गया
maĩ gayā
I went (male)

मैं गयी
maĩ gayī
I went (female)

तुम गए
tum gayē
You went (informal)

आप गये
Āp gayē
You went (formal / polite)

हम गये
Hum gayē
We went

वे गये

vē gayē
They went

वह गया
vaha gayā
He went

वह गयी
vaha gayī
She went

Culture: Families

As with most other Asian Countries, India also has a society which is built on strong family bonds. Parents consider that bringing their children up with a good education and health habits is paramount. Generally, teenagers or unmarried children live with their parents. Until the late 1950s, the joint family system was prevalent in almost all parts of India, irrespective of religion and culture.

Joint families ran like a well oiled machine! Usually the oldest male was the leader of such families whilst younger men earned money. Most of the families had land to farm, and it was their main source of income. Women looked after the housekeeping and child care departments. Children were either sent to school or were taught at home, depending on the financial and social position of the joint family. Older female members were there to look after children and to mentor the younger generation. This was a safe, secure atmosphere for children to grow up in. Warmth of relationships helped members to relax. There was no need for retirement homes as the young generation took care of their elders.



As time passed, most of the joint families lost their acres of farming land due to new government rules. The younger generation were forced to go out in search of jobs. This led to the birth of nuclear family system, as seen today in the Indian society. Each family consists of parents and children; and sometimes grandparents. Parents try their absolute best to find a suitable marriage match for their children. In return, most of the old people are still being looked after by their own children.

One notable change in family dynamics has been the increase in women seeking employment. Historically women did not work and therefore it took some time before women were seen to be of equal value in the workplace. However, women are well respected now, and hold some of India's most influential positions. A shining example of this progression is Her Excellency Pratibha Devisingh Patil, India's first female president.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.6 Formal

Hi and welcome back to another Rocket Hindi Language and Culture lesson! In this lesson, you're going to learn some more social etiquette. We'll talk about the correct way to greet people's parents - this is especially useful for those awkward 'meet the parents' dates!

Our Culture sections focuses on 'being the perfect guest'. It's likely that you'll be invited to an Indian home if you travel in India, so there are certain social 'rules' you need to be aware of.

Formal Meetings

Think about how you greet people in your own culture - friends, family, strangers. For each person, you have different words and actions that are appropriate. For instance, you probably wouldn't hug and kiss a complete stranger!

Meet the Parents

Indian culture also has it's own set of words that are appropriate for different social meetings. First let's look at the 'meet the parents' scenario. Perhaps you're on a first date, or perhaps you and just meeting a friends parents? These words will be useful:

मेरे बाप/ बापुजी
mērē bāpa/ bāpujī
My father

मेरी मां
mērī mā̃
My mother

आप के बापुजी
āpa kē bāpujī
Your father

आप की मां
āpa kī mā̃
Your mother

पिता जी
pitā jī
Father (very formal)

माता जी
mātā jī
Mother (very formal)

माँ-बाप
mā̃-bāpa
Mother and father

Your host may introduce his/her parents as "mērē bāpujī" (my father, with respect) and "mērī mā̃ "(my mother, affectionate). When you are introduced, you could say “Namastē jī” in return. “jī” shows that you pay respect to your host’s parents.

You might remember that “Tuma” is a casual way of saying “you” and “Āpa” shows more respect and is formal.

There are some other expressions for mother and father, which are less formal.

ammā (अम्मा), āyī(आयी), mammī (मम्मी) *Mother*

bāpu(बापु), abbā(अब्बा), ḍāḍī (डाडी) *Father*

Other Family Members

भाई
bhāī
Brother

भैया
bhaiyā
Older brother

बहन
bahana
Sister

बड़ी बहन
baṛī bahana
Older sister

मामा / चाचा
māmā / cācā
Uncle

मामी / चाची
māmī / cācī
Aunt

दीदी
dīdī
Elder sister (affectionate)

दादी / नानी
dādī / nānī
Grandmother

दादा / नाना
dādā / nānā
Grandfather

Family is all important in India. There are hundreds of words to explain relationships and they are all individual. This is the reason why there are two words for Uncle, Aunt, Grandmother and Grandfather. One refers to maternal and the other to paternal. Learning all these words can be daunting for a foreigner so sometimes the best method is to learn one set and stick with it! As long as you can refer to some Grandfather, the person you are talking with can help you express maternal or paternal.

Older or Younger?

- If you are talking to someone who is 5 or 7 years older than you, addressing the person with "*bhaiyā*" suffix shows warmth and affection.
- If it is a female, add "*bahana* Jī" at the end of her name.
- If the person is more than 15 years or more older than you, it is better to address that (male) with suffix "*cācā*" or "Kākā", which are more informal versions of "Uncle". Similarly, "*cācī*" or "*kākī*" can be used to address females in such situations.

Culture: Being a Guest

Hospitality is a very important part of Indian culture. Indians pride themselves on taking care of their guests in the best possible manner. The Sanskrit adage "*AThiThi dhevo bhava*" literally implies that a guest must be treated as God.

In many Western societies, it is considered as normal and polite to bring a drink such as a bottle of wine, when invited for lunch or dinner. But in an average Indian family scenario, this isn't appropriate. Try a selection of sweets, or some toys for the children in the

family instead - these will be warmly accepted.



Generally, it is the male head of the family that receives guests. The female members might be busy preparing the food in the kitchen. Some families introduce family members when the guest arrives, or the guest may have to wait until everyone is at the table for the meal before meeting the whole family.

The host family take great care to provide a fresh, homemade and plentiful meal for guests. Normally, no alcohol is served in a family atmosphere. The menu will vary depending on the religion, caste, culture and class of the family; but the general behavior is more or less the same, irrespective of these things.

In recent days, wealthy families have begun to employ catering services for big get togethers. Another drastic change is the presence of alcohol. Once upon a time, alcohol carried a certain undesirable 'social stigma', but these days Indian people will enjoy a drink in the presence of friends.

If you are fortunate enough to be welcomed into the home of an Indian family, try your best to observe and mimic their behaviour. It might seem strange or uncomfortable to you, but remember that this is how they do things. Think of it as an education, and a great experience to carry for the rest of your travelling days.

6.7 Hindi Proverbs

Ah, proverbs. One of my favorite topics! Proverbs are short sayings that express a truth. You might have heard sayings like "all good things come to an end" or "a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush" - these are both proverbs. Today you'll learn some famous Indian proverbs.

Hindi Proverbs

This grammar lesson is focused on proverbs or “Kahāvata”. Proverbs are short sayings that are handed down from generation to generation. I'm sure your own family have some they use frequently?

Learning Hindi proverbs will give you a glimpse into Indian culture. And if you can remember some of them, local Indian people will be very impressed when you use them in everyday conversation.

गरजनेवाले बादल बरसते नहीं । **garajanēvālē bādala barasatē nahī̃.**

This proverb is a little bit like the English saying: “A barking dog seldom bites”. Here is a breakdown of the saying;
garajanēvālē bādala = The cloud which makes loud thunder
barasatē nahī̃ = does not rain.

The whole meaning can be taken as

“*Those who boast about their capabilities, seldom do anything”.*



घर की मुर्गी दाल बराबर | *ghara kī murgī dāla barābara*

This is similar in meaning to the English proverb ***"the grass is always greener on the other side".*** Here it is, word by word:
ghara kī = of house
murgī = chicken
dāla = lentils
barābara = of normal quality

This proverb means that everyone has a tendency to undermine their own possessions and envy what others have.



बंदर क्या जाने अदरक का स्वाद । **bandara kyā jānē adaraka kā svāda**

bandara kyā jānē = what does a monkey know
adaraka = ginger
kā svāda = about taste of

The whole meaning is *"A monkey does not know anything about the taste of ginger".*
The implication is that **"***One who does not understand is not able to appreciate".*

The Caste System

In the early 16th and 17th centuries, the practice of "*Chathurvarna*" (the caste system) was very strong in all over India. "*Chathur*" stands for number *four*" and "*varna*" means *caste* or *group*. People were classified into four major categories:

Brahmanas - Who formed the top layer of the system and were believed to be the only group capable of performing temple rituals.

Kshathriys – Next layer in the system and were the rulers of small kingdoms.

Vaishyas- The third layer, these people were responsible for business and farming.

Shudras- this fourth layer was believed to be the lowest class and the people belonged to this category were supposed to serve the people in the other three categories.

Though the division was based on the kind of labor undertaken, later it became hereditary. The son of a King was always a King irrespective of his capabilities or skill. Similarly the son of a cleaner was always a cleaner even though he was highly intelligent and capable. The children in the lower castes were denied education. Women also, were treated as second class citizens.

This social attitude was changed and a better, tolerant society was formed in India through the invaluable contributions of cultural leaders like Vivekananda, Sri Narayana Guru, and Sri Rama Krishna Paramahamsa and so on.

Later, the British Rule introduced English education all over India and it helped the society to gain knowledge about the outer world. After independence, the modern Indian society treats all citizens alike. Education is the right of all Indians. Primary and Secondary education are free in government aided schools.



Though the ancient Hindu culture was misinterpreted by the leaders, the actual message of the Hinduism is **"*To lead a life of your choice without harming others and fulfilling own responsibilities".***

The practice of *"Chathurvarna"* still lurks in modern Indian society. But it is taken into consideration only in marriage proposals. People of different castes learn, work and live in harmony in modern India.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.8 Expressing the Future

We've already covered the future tense in a previous lesson but it's one of those topics that is so important, we're going to review it in today's lesson. You'll learn how to use the verb *"ho"* (to be). In the culture section, you'll get the low-down on marriage in India.

Expressing the Future

In Language and Culture lesson 4.7, you learned how to form the present tense with several different verbs: 'to drink', 'to see' and 'to go'.

Today we're going to learn how to use the verb "*ho*" (to be). Below you can see the conjugation for it:

Pronoun	***Verb stem***	***Rule***	***Future form***
I (fem)	**hū̃**	Add hū̃gī	**maĩ hū̃gī**
I (masc)	**hū̃**	Add hū̃gā	**maĩ hū̃gā**
You (fem)	**hō**	Add ōgī	**tuma hōgī**
You (masc)	**hō**	Add ōgē	**tuma hōgē**
They	**hō**	Add ngē	**vē hōngē**
We	**hō**	Add ngē	**hama hōngē**
He	**hō**	Add gā	**vaha hōgā**
She	**hō**	Add gī	**vaha hōgī**

Examples

मैं वहाँ हूँगा
maĩ vahā̃ hū̃gā
I will be there (male)

मैं वहाँ हूँगी
maĩ vahā̃ hū̃gī
I will be there (female)

तुम वहाँ होगे
tuma vahā̃ hōgē
You will be there(masculine)

तुम वहाँ होगी
tuma vahā̃ hōgī
You will be there (feminine)

तुम वहाँ होंगे
tuma vahā̃ hōngē
You will be there(plural)

आप वहाँ होंगे
āpa vahā̃ hōngē
You will be there (polite)

हम वहाँ होंगे
hama vahā̃ hōngē
We will be there

वे वहाँ होंगे
vē vahā̃ hōngē
They will be there

वह वहाँ होगा
vaha vahā̃ hōgā
He will be there

वह वहाँ होगी
vaha vahā̃ hōgī
She will be there

Some more examples

तूफ़ान होगा
tūfāna hōgā
There will be a storm

बारिश होगी
bāriśa hōgī
There will be rain

You may have noticed that in the phrase "there will be a storm", the Hindi equivalent ends with “hōgā” and in “there will be rain” the Hindi sentence ends with "hōgī".

The difference is due to the difference in gender of “tūfāna ” and “bāriśa ”. “tūfāna ” is masculine and “bāriśa " is feminine.



Using the Negative

If you want to talk about what you won’t do in the future, use "nahī̃ ". For example,

कल मैं यहाँ नहीं हूँगा
kala maĩ yahā̃ nahī̃ hū̃gā
I won’t be here tomorrow

तूफ़ान नहीं होगा
tūfāna nahī̃ hōgā
There won’t be a storm

You must know that...

We can use the future tense with hōgā to suggest that someone has done something. This sounds a little confusing, but we do it all the time. Here are some common examples in English:

- You must be tired!
- You must be from England

- She will have enjoyed it

All we do here is construct the sentence as normal and then add the appropriate agreement ofhōgā. Simple! Here are a few examples, try to work out what the sentences mean before you read the English translations. To do this pay close attention to what the verb is doing; is it formed in the past, present or future tense?

आपको मालूम होगा
āpakō māluma hōgā
You must know

आपको गर्मी लगती होगी
āpakō garmī lagati hōgi
You must feel the heat/You will feel the heat

उसको अच्छा लगा होगा
usakō acchā lagā hōgā
He/She must will have enjoyed it

इसने किया होगा
isanē kiyā hōgā
He/She must have done it

अभी वह स्कूल जा रहा होगा
abhī vaha skula jā rahā hōgā
He must be going to school just now

आप इंग्लैंड से होंगे
āpa inlaind sē honge
You must be from England

Culture: Marriage

Marriage is considered to be a "Holy Relationship" in Indian Society. Almost all marriages are arranged ones. 'Arranged' means that the parents of the man and woman have chosen them a partner to marry. This is **very** different to Western culture!

This does not mean that there are no love marriages at all. "Love after marriage" is considered to be more reliable than "marriage after love" in Indian culture. Parents start searching for a match when their daughter turns eighteen. The main criteria on which a groom is selected are caste, family, horoscope match and financial security. In earlier days the girl and boy met for the first time on their wedding day. However times have changed and rules have relaxed a little. The 'would be' couple are now given the opportunity to meet each other prior to the wedding.



This idea contrasts highly with Western traditions, where couples often date for several years before even considering marriage! Remaining unmarried through life is considered to be abnormal in Indian culture. According to Indian Philosophy, one should go through all the four phases of life to attain the ultimate salvation. Those four stages are "*Kaumara*" (childhood), "*Brahmacharya*" (the stage of education and getting settled), "Garhasthya" (full family life) and "*Vaanaprastha*" (the retired life where one entrusts all duties to his/her successors). So to attain divine salvation each and every person has to go through all these phases . Personal

preferences are given less importance than maintaining social status and family relationships.

There are some great advantages in arranged marriages. The couple receive continuous moral support from both families, including the guidance and advice of grandparents. Of course the downside is the lack of personal choice and privacy. But once married, the husband and wife try their best to keep the relationship and move forward irrespective of any differences in opinion.

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.9 Family Related Words

Today you'll be able to talk about your family - in a little more detail than you would in English!

Family Related Words

Homework

Here are the words we left you for homework last time. See how well you did.

दूध
dūdha
Milk

मक्खन
makkhana
Butter

पनीर
panīra
Cottage cheese

दही
dahī
Yogurt

Family

So following on from our discussion of Indian families, here's a list of family related words. You'll notice that there are different names for uncles and aunts on either side of the family.

पिता/ बाप
pitā/ bāpa
Father

माता/ मां
mātā/ mā̃
Mother

मामा
māmā
Maternal uncle

मामी
māmī
Maternal aunt

चाचा
cācā
Paternal uncle

चाची
cācī
Paternal aunt



"mātā/ mā̃"   "pitā/ bāpa"
"mother"   "father"

Here's another list of close people.

मेरा दोस्त
mērā dōsta
My friend (male)

मेरी सहेली
mērī sahēlī
My friend (female)

मेरी प्यारी
mērī pyārī
My beloved (female)

मेरे मंगेतर
mērē mangētara
My fiancé (male)



Have you noticed that there are two different words for father and mother? Well,"*pithaa*" is a more Sanskrit version for father and the same with "*maathaa*", "mother". In spoken Hindi , *"baap"* (father), and "*maa*" (mother) are commonly used.

A Little Task

Here's a little task for you to work on before the next writing lesson. See if you can write the script for each word below. Good luck!

mere naanaa	*My Grandfather (paternal)*
meree naanee	*My grandmother (paternal)*

meraa bhaayee	*My brother*
meree bahan	*My sister*

---

ummīda hai ki āpa kō yaha pāṭha acchā lagā!
उम्मीद है कि आप को यह पाठ अच्छा लगा!
Hope you enjoyed this lesson!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.10 Dinner Party Vocabulary

This writing lesson will give you make you a gracious guest, so you'll have a great social agenda to practice all you've learnt so far!

Dinner Party Vocabulary

First a Review

Here are the answers for the homework we set in the last lesson. You can find out how well have you done!

मेरे नाना
mērē nānā
My grandfather (paternal)

मेरी नानी
mērī nānī
My grandmother (paternal)

मेरा भाई
mērā bhāī
My brother

मेरी बहन
mērī bahana
My sister

Now to the Dinner Party...

Imagine you've been invited out by a new Indian friend - how exciting! You've even received an invitation, now you just need to figure out what the words on the invitation say. The following words might help to explain the occasion...

मेहमान
mēhamāna
Guest

पार्टी
pārṭī
Party

रात का खाना / डिन्नर
rāta kā khānā / ḍinnara
Dinner

शादी
śādī
Wedding

मौका
maukā
Occasion



"rāta kā khānā / ḍinnara"
"dinner"



"śādī"
"wedding"

Here are some phrases that you might hear at a party:

लीजिए
lījiē
Please have

रुकिए
rukiē
Wait

रुकिए
rukiē
Stop

खायिए
khāyiē
Please eat

पीजिए
pījiē
Please drink

Homework

Finally, here's your homework

janamdhin	*Birthday*
shaadhee kee saalgiraah	*Wedding anniversary*
aMthim saMskaar	*Funeral*
sathmaasaa / godh bharaayee	*Baby shower*

Great work - that's another Writing lesson complete! Don't forget about that homework. Just remember that practice is the key. Even if it seems quite hard to begin with, you'll be surprised when a few months have passed, and you're breezing through the same work you struggled with today.

kaṛī mēhanata kāyama rakhẽ !
कड़ी मेहनत कायम रखें !
Keep persisting on your hard work!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.11 Food, Glorious Food!

Now that you're taste buds are tingling let's get into todays delectable writing lesson.

Food, Glorious Food!

First, Some Answers

Here are the words that we left you with last time.

जन्मदिन
janmadina
Birthday

शादी की सालगिरह
śādī kī sālagiraha
Wedding anniversary

अंतिम संस्कार
antima saṁskāra
Funeral

सतमासा / गोद भराई
satamāsā / gōda bharāī
Baby shower

Meal Times

In our last lesson we talked about being a guest in someone's home for a meal. The following words will be very useful for you as you navigate your way through the meal!

थाली
thālī
Plate

फ़ार्क
fārka
Fork

चाकू
cākū
Knife

नमक
namaka
Salt

काली मिर्च
kālī mirca
Pepper

चम्मच
cammaca
Spoon

Here I think it's important to give you a quick explanation of the words: *fork* and *knife*.



The literal translation of the word *fork* is “Kāṇṭā aura Śūla” in Hindi. This translation is not suitable for talking about eating accessories. Also the literal translation for “*knife*” is “Cākū”. So, if you use *“*Kāṇṭā aura Cākū” for *knife and fork*, you will be understood, though the expression sounds a bit weird.

Normally, Indians eat with their right hand and only “upper class society” use a knife and fork for daily meals.

Describing Food

The following words will be useful for expressing your appreciation of food, and also for identifying the style in which it is cooked when reading a menu.


मज़ेदार
mazēdāra
Delicious

कच्चा
kaccā
Raw

पक्का
pakkā
Ripe

ग्रिल किया हुआ
grila kiyā huā
Grilled

तला हुआ
talā huā
Fried

उबला हुआ
ubalā huā
Boiled

Something to Take Away

Finally, here are some common Indian cooking ingredients. See how you go writing them yourself.

Download

Ālū

Potato

Download

Jīrā

Cumin seeds

Download

Tēla

Oil

Download

Ghī

Ghee (Clarified butter)



"Ālū"	"Jīrā"	"Tēla"	"Ghī"
"potato"	"cumin seeds"	"oil"	"ghee" (clarified butter)

Did you know that the word “Ghee” is originally Hindi?

Good luck with your homework, we'll see how you went in the next Hindi lesson.

apanā khyāla rakhẽ!
अपना ख्याल रखें!
Take care!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

6.12 Marriage Related Words

Today you'll be able to expand on your writing skills to describe those close to you and be able to congratulate someone when they gain a new family member.

Marriage Related Words

First a Review

Here are those cooking ingredients that we left you to sound out and try writing last time. Did your efforts look anything like this?

आलू
ālū
Potato

जीरा
jīrā
Cumin seeds

तेल
tēla
Oil

घी
ghī
Ghee

Indian Marriages

Now here's a list of words related to today's culture lesson on the Indian marriage system.

पति
pati
husband

पत्नी
patnī
wife

मेरे मंगेतर
mērē mangētara
my fiancé (male)

मेरी मंगेतर
mērī mangētara
my fiancé (female)

ससुर
sasura
father in law

सास
sāsa
mother in law

Now if you did get engaged, or you know someone who recently got engaged, the words below will probably be useful.

बधाइयाँ
badhāiyā̃

Congratulations

धन्यवाद
dhanyavāda
Thanks

कोई बात नहीं
kōī bāta nahī̃
That’s alright

स्वागत
svāgata
Welcome

खुश
khuśa
Happy

न्योता
nyōtā
Invitation

Here are a few words to practice with until our next lesson.

dhoolhaa	*Groom*
pathnee	*Wife*
khush	*Glad*
bahoo	*Daughter in law*

Congratulations, you've come to the end of another Rocket Hindi Writing. Keep up with the practice!

Until next time...bye!
agalī bāra taka alavidā!!

अगली बार तक अलविदा!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.1 Activities

Share what you're into with your Indian mates Nikita and Rohan as you take part in a discussion about your favorite recreational activities and pastimes. Learn how to ask what activities your friends enjoy doing, plus get the inside scoop on the best ski slopes in India.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या तुम्हें सच मुच खेल खेलने में आनन्द आता है?
kyā tumhẽ saca muca khēla khēlanē mẽ ānanda ātā hai?
By the way, do you enjoy doing sports?

Nikita

ऐसा कोई खेल नहीं है जो मुझे पसन्द नहीं ।
aisā kōī khēla nahī̃ hai jō mujhē pasanda nahī̃ .
There is no sport I don't enjoy.

Rohan

रग्बी के बारे में क्या ख़याल है?
ragbī kē bārē mẽ kyā k̲h̲ayāla hai?
What about rugby?

Nikita

ठीक है, सिवाये रग्बी के ।
ṭhīka hai, sivāyē ragbī kē.
Well, apart from rugby.

Rohan

गर्मियों में मुझे क्रिकेट खेलना सबसे ज्यादा पसन्द है ।
garmiyõ mẽ mujhē krikēṭa khēlanā sabasē jyādā pasanda hai.
I love to play cricket in the summer.

Nikita

शीत ऋतू में तुम किस प्रकार का खेल खेलते हो?
śīta r̥tū mẽ tuma kisa prakāra kā khēla khēlatē hō?
And what kind of sport do you do in winter?

स्की करते हो?
skī karatē hō?
Skiing?

Rohan

ठीक ठीक, क्या सप्ताह के अन्त में तुम स्कीइंग पर चलना चाहोगी?
ṭhīka ṭhīka, kyā saptāha kē anta mẽ tuma Skī'iṅga para calanā cāhōgī?
Exactly. Would you like to go skiing on the weekend?

Nikita

अच्छा सुझाव, लेकिन क्या अभी कहीं बर्फ़ पडी है?
acchā sujhāva, lēkina kyā abhī kahī̃ barfa paḍī hai?
Great idea! But is there snow anywhere at present?

Rohan

जरूर, हिमाचल प्रदेश के दक्षिण में, कुलु मनाली में।
jarūra, himācala pradēśa kē dakṣiṇa mẽ, kulu manālī mẽ.
In the south of Himachal Pradesh, in Kulu- Manali for sure.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मेरा नाम है रोहन
mērā nāma hai Rōhana
My name is Rohan.

मुझे तुम्हारे साथ वक्त बिताने में आनंद आता है
mujhē tumhārē sātha vakta bitānē mẽ ānanda ātā hai
I really enjoy spending time with you.

मुझे दीवाली मेला सच में पसंद है
mujhē dīvālī mēlā saca mẽ pasanda hai
I liked the Diwali festival very much.

क्या तुम अब सैर पर चलना पसंद करोगी ?
kyā tuma aba saira para calanā pasanda karōgī ?
Would you like to go for a walk?

बिलकुल नहीं, मैं थोडी थक्की हुई हूँ
bilakula nahī̃, maĩ thōḍī thakkī huī hū̃
I'd rather not. I'm fairly tired.

क्या मैं थोडी देर के लिए अंदर आ सकता हूँ?
kyā maĩ thōḍī dēra kē liē andara ā sakatā hū̃?
Can I come in for a little while?

मुझे नहीं पता
mujhē nahī̃ patā
I don't know.

क्या तुम मुझे पसंद नहीं करती?
kyā tuma mujhē pasanda nahī̃ karatī?
Don't you like me?

तुम अच्छे हो, लेकिन बस इतना ही
tuma acchē hō, lēkina basa itanā hī
You are nice, but that's all.

अच्छा ठीक तुमको बाद में मिलता हूँ
acchā ṭhīka tumakō bāda mẽ milatā hū̃
Ok then, see you later.

बसंत
basanta
Spring

बसंत ऋतु में तुम किस प्रकार का खेल खेलते हो?
basanta ṛtu mẽ tuma kisa prakāra kā khēla khēlatē hō?
What kind of sports do you do in the spring?

शरत
śarata

Autumn

हाँ
hā̃
Yes

उत्तर में ठंड है
uttara mē̃ ṭhaṇḍa hai
It's cold in the north.

दक्षिण में गर्मी है
dakṣiṇa mē̃ garmī hai
It's warm in the south.

स्कीइंग के अलावा
skīinga kē alāvā
Except for skiing

गर्मी में तुम किस तरह के खेल खेलते हो?
garmī mē̃ tuma kisa taraha kē khēla khēlatē hō?
What kind of sports do you do in the summer?

मुझे स्कीयिंग सबसे ज़्यादा पसंद है
mujhē skīyinga sabasē zyādā pasanda hai
I enjoy skiing the most.

सप्ताह का अंत
saptāha kā anta
The weekend

ऐसा कोई फ़ूल नही, जो मुझे पसंद नहीं
aisā kōī fūla nahī, jō mujhē pasanda nahī̃
There are no flowers that I don't like.

अलविदा
alavidā !
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.2 Going Skiing

With your ski pass in hand it's time to organize some rental equipment. With a little help from Rocket Hindi, you'll be away up the mountain in no time!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या तुम्हारे पास तुम्हरा स्की पास है?
kyā tumhārē pāsa tumharā skī pāsa hai?
Have you got your ski pass?

Nikita

बिल्कुल। क्या तुम्हें पता है मैं कहाँ से कुछ स्कीस किराये पर ले सकती हूँ?
bilkula. kyā tumhẽ patā hai maĩ kahā̃ sē kucha skīsa kirāyē para lē sakatī hū̃?
Of course. Do you know where I can rent skis?

Rohan

लिफ़्ट के सामने किराये वाली जगह है।
lifṭa kē sāmanē kirāyē vālī jagaha hai
There is a rental place directly opposite the ski lift.

Nikita

मुझे उम्मीद है कि मैं अब भी स्की कर सकती हूँ।
mujhē ummīda hai ki maĩ aba bhī skī kara sakatī hū̃.
I hope I can still ski.

Rohan

उस से तुम्हारा क्या मतलब है?
usa sē tumhārā kyā matalaba hai?
What do you mean?

Nikita

वैसे, बहुत समय पहले किया था।
vaisē, bahuta samaya pahalē kiyā thā.
Well, it’s been a long time.

Rohan

हम स्लेज भी किराये पर ले सकते हैं।
hama slēja bhī kirāyē para lē sakatē haĩ.
We could also rent a sled

Nikita

नहीं, स्लेज बच्चों के लिये होते हैं। मुझे स्कीस चाहिये।
nahī̃, slēja baccõ kē liyē hōtē haĩ. mujhē skīsa cāhiyē.
No, sleds are for kids. I want skis.

Rohan

वैसे मुझे तुम्हारी ऊनी टोपी पसन्द है। तुम मज़ेदार दिख रही हो।
vaisē mujhē tumhārī ūnī ṭōpī pasanda hai. tuma mazēdāra dikha rahī hō.
I like your woolen hat, by the way. You look funny.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

नमस्कार !
namaskāra !
Greetings!

क्या तुम्हें सचमुच खेल खेलने में आनंद आता है?
kyā tumhẽ sacamuca khēla khēlanē mẽ ānanda ātā hai?
By the way, do you enjoy doing sports?

ऐसा कोई खेल नही है जो मुझे पसंद नहीं
aisā kōī khēla nahī hai jō mujhē pasanda nahī̃
There is no sport I don't enjoy.

रग्बी के बारे में क्या ख़याल है?
ragbī kē bārē mẽ kyā k̲h̲ayāla hai?
What about rugby?

ठीक है, सिवाये रग्बी के
ṭhīka hai, sivāyē ragbī kē
Well, apart from rugby.

गर्मियों में मुझे क्रिकेट खेलना सबसे ज़्यादा पसंद है
garmiyō̃ mẽ mujhē krikēṭa khēlanā sabasē zyādā pasanda hai
I love to play cricket in the summer.

शीत ऋतु में तुम किस प्रकार का खेल खेलते हो? स्की करते हो?
śīta ṛtu mẽ tuma kisa prakāra kā khēla khēlatē hō? skī karatē hō?
And what kind of sport do you do in winter? Skiing?

ठीक ठीक । क्या सप्ताह के अंत में तुम स्की पर चलना चाहोगी ?
ṭhīka ṭhīka . kyā saptāha kē anta mẽ tuma skī para calanā cāhōgī ?
Exactly. Would you like to go skiing on the weekend?

अच्छा सुझाव, लेकिन क्या अभी कहीं बरफ़ पडी है?
acchā sujhāva, lēkina kyā abhī kahī̃ barafa paḍī hai?
Great idea! But is there snow anywhere at present?

ज़रूर, हिमाचल प्रदेश के दक्षिण में, कुलु मनाली में
zarūra, himācala pradēśa kē dakṣiṇa mẽ, kulu manālī mẽ
In the south of Himachal Pradesh, in Kulu- Manali for sure.

क्या तुम्हें पिज़्ज़ा पसंद है?
kyā tumhẽ pizzā pasanda hai?
Would you like pizza?

रोहन मेरे सामने है
rōhana mērē sāmanē hai
Rohan is right across from me.

बस मेरे आगे है
basa mērē āgē hai
The bus is ahead of me.

ट्राम मेरे पीछे है
ṭrāma mērē pīchē hai
The tram is behind me.

मुझे उम्मीद है मैं अब भी तैर सकता हूँ
mujhē ummīda hai maĩ aba bhī taira sakatā hū̃
I hope I can still swim.

वक्त
vakta
Time

हम एक शिबिर गाड़ी भी किराये पर ले सकते हैं
hama ēka śibira gāṛī bhī kirāyē para lē sakatē haĩ
We could also rent a campervan.

अच्छी
acchī
Nice

तुम अच्छी दिख रही हो
tuma acchī dikha rahī hō
You look nice.

मेरा स्की पास कहाँ है?
mērā skī pāsa kahā̃ hai?
Where is my ski pass?

क्या तुम्हें पता है मैं स्कीइंग केलिए कहाँ जा सकती हूँ?
kyā tumhẽ patā hai maĩ skīinga kēliē kahā̃ jā sakatī hū̃?
Do you know where I can go skiing?

भोजनालय संग्रहालय के सामने है
bhōjanālaya sangrahālaya kē sāmanē hai
The restaurant is opposite the museum.

तुम एक कॉफ़ी भी पी सकते हो
tuma ēka kôfī bhī pī sakatē hō
You could also drink a coffee.

शिबिर गाडी यात्रियों केलिए है
śibira gāḍī yātriyō̃ kēliē hai
Campervans are for tourists.

मैं आज पिज़्ज़ा खाना चाहता हूँ
maĩ āja pizzā khānā cāhatā hū̃
I want to eat pizza today.

बहुत अच्छा
bahuta acchā
Well done!

अलविदा
alavidā!
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.3 On the Mountain

Get your skis lined up, it's time to hit the slopes as we go alpine with this Hindi lesson. With lunch time in their midst, one of our skiers become distracted just long enough for disaster to strike...

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं हूँ रोहन
maĩ hū̃ Rōhana
I'm Rohan.

क्या तुम्हारे पास तुम्हारा स्की पास है?
kyā tumhārē pāsa tumhārā skī pāsa hai?
Have you got your ski pass?

बिल्कुल. क्या तुम्हें पता है मैं कहाँ से कुछ स्कीस किराये पर ले सकती हूँ?
bilkula. kyā tumhẽ patā hai maĩ kahā̃ sē kucha skīsa kirāyē para lē sakatī hū̃?
Of course. Do you know where I can rent skis?

लिफ़्ट से सीधे अगली किरायेवाली जगह है
lifṭa sē sīdhē agalī kirāyēvālī jagaha hai
There is a rental place directly opposite the ski lift.

मुझे उम्मीद है कि मैं अब भी स्की कर सकती हूँ
mujhē ummīda hai ki maĩ aba bhī skī kara sakatī hū̃
I hope I can still ski.

उस से तुम्हारा क्या मतलब है?
usa sē tumhārā kyā matalaba hai?
What do you mean?

वैसे , बहुत वक्त पहले किया था
vaisē , bahuta vakta pahalē kiyā thā
Well, it's been a long time.

हम स्लेज भी किराये पर ले सकते हैं
hama slēja bhī kirāyē para lē sakatē haĩ
We could also rent a sled

नहीं, स्लेज , बच्चों के लिए होते हैं, मुझे स्कीस चाहिए
nahī̃, slēja , baccō̃ kē liē hōtē haĩ, mujhē skīsa cāhiē
No, sleds are for kids. I want skis.

वैसे , मुझे तुम्हारी ऊनी टोपी पसंद है । तुम मज़ेदार दिख रही हो!
vaisē , mujhē tumhārī ūnī ṭōpī pasanda hai . tuma mazēdāra dikha rahī hō!
I like your woolen hat, by the way. You look funny.

कुछ गरम पीने के लिए
kucha garama pīnē kē liē
Something hot to drink

मुझे अभी वापस जाते हुए गाडी चलानी है
mujhē abhī vāpasa jātē huē gāḍī calānī hai
I still have to drive back.

चलो स्कीइंग करने चलते हैं
calō skīinga karanē calatē haĩ
Let's go skiing.

चलो प्रार्थना करते हैं
calō prārthanā karatē haĩ
Let us pray.

मैं भूखा हूँ
maĩ bhūkhā hū̃
I am hungry.

मैं प्यासा हूँ
maĩ pyāsā hū̃
I am thirsty.

मेरे पास स्कीस हैं
mērē pāsa skīsa haĩ
I have skis.

वह सही है
vaha sahī hai
That's right

एक घंटे में
ēka ghaṇṭē mẽ
In an hour.

हम कहें...
hama kahẽ...
We say...

हम कुछ नहीं कहेंगे
hama kucha nahī̃ kahēngē
We'll say nothing!

अभी ३ बजे हैं
abhī 3 bajē haĩ
It's 3:00

अभी साढे सात बजे हैं
abhī sāḍhē sāta bajē haĩ
It's 7:30 (or half to eight)

अभी पौने दो बजे हैं
abhī paunē dō bajē haĩ
It's quarter to two

बहुत अच्छे
bahuta acchē
Very good!

घंटे
ghaṇṭē
Hours

मिनट
minaṭa
Minutes

सेकंड
sēkaṇḍa
Seconds

मुझे अब एक अंतराल चाहिए
mujhē aba ēka antarāla cāhiē
I need a break now !

वह बाज़ार जाने का रास्ता है
vaha bāzāra jānē kā rāstā hai
That's the way to the marketplace

अभी पौने चार बजे हैं
abhī paunē chaar bajē haĩ
It's quarter to four (3:45).

चलो ८:00 बजे खाएंगे
calō 8:00 bajē khāēngē
Let's eat at 8:00 pm.

चलो गिरजाघर वापस चलते हैं
calō girajāghara vāpasa calatē haĩ
Let's drive back to the church.

मैं सिर्फ़ कॉफ़ी पीना चाहता हूँ
maĩ sirfa kôfī pīnā cāhatā hū̃
I just want to drink coffee.

अलविदा
alavidā
Farewell!

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

चलो पर्वतीय शिविर में वापस चलते हैं।
calō parvatīya śivira mē̃ vāpisa calatē haĩ.
Come one, let's go back to the mountain hut.

Nikita

अभी से?
abhī sē?
Already?

Rohan

डेढ बज रहा है, मुझे भूख लगी है!
ḍēḍha baja rahā hai, mujhē bhūkha lagī hai!
It is half past one. I'm hungry

Nikita

तुम सिर्फ़ मसाला चाय पीना चाहते हो
tuma sirfa masālā cāya pīnā cāhatē hō
You just want to drink masala Chai

Rohan

सही, वह भी
sahī, vaha bhī
Right, that also

Nikita

आधे घन्टे में, ठीक?
ādhē ghanṭē mē̃, ṭhīka?
In half an hour, okay?

Rohan

कह लो पौने दो बजे?
kaha lō paunē dō bajē?
Let’s say at quarter to 2?

Nikita

अच्छा ठीक । अब चलो ।
acchā ṭhīka. aba calō .
Well, OK! Come on now

Rohan

ध्यान से देखो! वहाँ पर नीचे ढलान है!!
dhyāna sē dēkhō! vahā̃ para nīcē ḍhalāna hai!!
Watch out! There is a slope down there.

Nikita

आहाहह!
āhāhaha!!
AHHHH

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.4 An Accident

You can never be too prepared for the unexpected, and IF something happens you'll be ready to take on the challenge in Hindi. In this lesson you'll learn how to explain what's wrong, how you feel and get the help you need in the case of an accident.

Conversation Transcript

Rohan

क्या तुम्हें कोई दर्द है?
kyā tumhẽ kōī darda hai?
Do you have any pain?

Nikita

हाँ, मेरी बायीं टान्ग में बहुत चोट लगी है।
hā̃, mērī bāyī̃ ṭānga mẽ bahuta cōṭa lagī hai.
Yes, my left leg hurts very much

Rohan

हम्हें अस्पताल में जाना चाहिये।
hamhẽ aspatāla mẽ jānā cāhiyē.
We have to go to the hospital

Nikita

मैं पर्वत से नीचे कैसे उतरूंगी?
maĩ parvata sē nīcē kaisē utarūngī?
How shall I get down the mountain?

Rohan

मैं तुम्हें उठा लूंगा।
maĩ tumhẽ uṭhā lūngā.
I'll carry you

Nikita

सौभाग्य से मेरे पास यात्रा बीमा है।
saubhāgya sē mērē pāsa yātrā bīmā hai.
Luckily I've got travel insurance

Rohan

तथापि मुझे उम्मीद है कि यह टूटी नहीं है।
tathāpi mujhē ummīda hai ki yaha ṭūṭī nahī̃ hai.
Nevertheless I hope that it's not broken

Nikita

क्या अस्पताल में लस्सी मिलेगी?
kyā aspatāla mẽ lassī milēgī?
Will there be Lassi in the hospital?

Rohan

तुम मूर्ख हो।
tuma mūrkha hō.
You are silly.

Extra Vocabulary

स्वागत है आज के राकेट हिंदी के पाठ मे
svāgata hai āja kē rākēṭa hindī kē pāṭha mē
Welcome to todays Rocket Hindi lesson

मैं निकिता हूँ
maĩ nikitā hũ
I'm Nikita

और मैं अभी भी रोहन हूँ
aura maĩ abhī bhī Rōhana hũ
And I'm still Rohan

चलो पर्वतीय शिबिर में वापस चलते हैं
calō parvatīya śibira mẽ vāpasa calatē haĩ
Come one, let's go back to the mountain hut.

अभी से?
abhī sē?
Already?

डेढ बज रहा है, मुझे भोओख लगी है
ḍēḍha baja rahā hai, mujhē bhōōkha lagī hai
It is half past one. I'm hungry

तुम सिर्फ़ मसाला चाय पीना चाहते हो
tuma sirfa masālā cāya pīnā cāhatē hō
You just want to drink masala Chai

सही, वह भी
sahī, vaha bhī
Right, that also

आधे घंटे में ,ठीक?
ādhē ghaṇṭē mẽ ,ṭhīka?
In half an hour, okay?

कह लो, पौने दो बजे?
kaha lō, paunē dō bajē?
Let's say at quarter to 2?

अच्छा ठीक , अब चलो
acchā ṭhīka , aba calō
Well, OK! Come on now

ध्यान से देखो! वहाँ निचे धलान है
dhyāna sē dēkhō! vahā̃ nicē dhalāna hai!!!
Watch out! There is a slope down there.

सिरदर्द
siradarda
Headache

पेट दर्द
pēṭa darda
Stomachache

क्या तुम्हें सिर दर्द है?
kyā tumhẽ sira darda hai?
Do you have a headache?

क्या तुम्हें पेट दर्द है?
kyā tumhẽ pēṭa darda hai?
Do you have a stomachache?

मुझे सिर दर्द है
mujhē sira darda hai
I have a headache.

क्या दर्द ज़्यादा है?
kyā darda zyādā hai?
Is the pain excessive?

हाँ, दर्द ज़्यादा है
hā̃, darda zyādā hai
Yes, there is much pain.

नहीं, दर्द बिल्कुल ज़्यादा नहीं हैं
nahī̃, darda bilkula zyādā nahī̃ haĩ
No, the pain is not much at all.

क्या कॉफ़ी बहुत कडक है?
kyā kôfī bahuta kaḍaka hai?
Is the coffee very strong?

हाँ, धन्यवाद, मुझे मेरी कोफ़ी कडक पसंद है
hā̃, dhanyavāda, mujhē mērī kōfī kaḍaka pasanda hai
Yes, thanks I like my coffee strong.

वहाँ चोट लगी है
vahā̃ cōṭa lagī hai
That is where the hurt is

दाईं
dāī̃
Right

मेरे दायें हाथ में बहुत चोट लगी है
mērē dāyẽ hātha mẽ bahuta cōṭa lagī hai
My right hand hurts a lot.

थोडी सी
thōḍī sī
A little / Slight

एक कैंडी की थैली
ēka kaiṇḍī kī thailī
A bag of candy

मैं थैला उठा लूँगा
maĩ thailā uṭhā lū̃gā
I will carry the big bag.

मैं डाकखाने तक पाकट उठा लूँगा
maĩ ḍākakhānē taka pākaṭa uṭhā lū̃gā
I will carry the package to the post office.

सौभाग्य से मेरे पास टिकट है
saubhāgya sē mērē pāsa ṭikaṭa hai'
Luckily I have a ticket.

तुम सनकी हो! पागल
tuma sanakī hō! pāgala
You're crazy!

तुम पागल हो
tuma pāgala hō
You’re mad.

मेरी दायीं टांग में थोडी चोट लगी है
mērī dāyī̃ ṭānga mẽ thōḍī cōṭa lagī hai
My right leg is slightly hurt.

हम्हें भोजनालय जाना है
hamhẽ bhōjanālaya jānā hai
We have to go to the restaurant?

सौभाग्य से हम्हारे पास रोकेट हिन्दी है
saubhāgya sē hamhārē pāsa Rōkēṭa hindī hai
Luckily, we have Rocket Hindi!

शुभकामनायें
śubhakāmanāyẽ !
Congratulations!

अलविदा
alavidā!
Farewell!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.5 Cricket

In this lesson you'll learn some cricket terminology and about Indian sporting culture as well as some basic colours.

Expressing Ideas

It's essential to know at least a handful of phrases that allow you to express your ideas. In these phrases you'll need to use plenty of descriptive words. We'll start with some basic words on colors.

काला
kālā
Black

सफ़ेद
safēda
White

लाल
lāla
Red

नीला
nīlā
Blue

हरा
harā
Green

पीला
pīlā
Yellow

बैंगनी
baiṅganī
Purple

भूरा
bhūrā
Brown



"bhūrā" "brown"
"harā" "green"
"lāla" "red"

Cricket Fever!



If you didn't already know, cricket is exceptionally popular in India! You can expect a lot of conversation about this game all over India, especially if the Indian cricket team is playing in a prestigious match like the World Cup. So here are some phrases to get involved in a “cricket conversation”.

बल्लेबाज़ी कौन कर रहा है?
ballēbāzī kauna kara rahā hai?
Who is batting?

Or if you already know the batting team, and you want to know the runs they scored, you could ask,

कितने रनस?
kitanē ranasa?
How many runs?

Or if you want to know about the remaining overs, you could ask,

कितने ओवर्स बाकी हैं?
kitanē ōvarsa bākī haĩ?
How many overs remain?

Suppose you missed the presentation ceremony, and want to know who the Man of the Match is;

मेन ओफ़ मैच कौन है?
mēna ōfa maica kauna hai?
Who is the Man of the Match?



You will find that many of the cricket words are Indian versions of English words, such as;

रन
rana
Run

ओवर
ōvara
Over

पिच
pica
Pitch

कोच्च
kōcca
Coach

Culture: Sports and Games in India

India was known for its hockey team in the early 1920s. Dhyan Chand, the famous Indian hockey player was known as the “Hockey Magician”, for his extraordinary abilities. His skills brought three Olympic gold medals to India in 1928, 1932 and 1936. But this glory didn’t last long. In recent years Indian Hockey has not produced any success, though it still has the title of “Official National Sport”.



Cricket, introduced by the British Regime, is the most popular and biggest revenue generating sport in India. The young generation cannot go a day without cricket discussions, and they try their best not to miss any of the games that India plays. A Hindi film “Lagaan”, was based on cricket in British India. The story is about a village in Rajasthan. The villagers would be exempt from tax, if they won a cricket match against the British team! This just goes to show how important the role cricket played nineteenth century India was!

Over time, cricket became a status symbol, and anyone who disliked the sport was considered “low”. Popular cricketers like Ravi Sasthri, Sunil Gawaskar and Kapil Dev were heart throbs of the then teenagers. The story is the same now. M S Dhoni, Yuvraj Singh, Harbhajan Singh and the rest of the young cricketers are worshipped by youth all over India.

P.T. Usha , from the Indian state of Kerala, is regarded as “The Queen of Track and Field”. She won 5 gold medals in the 1985 Asian Track and Field meet and holds the record of “The female earned most gold medals in a single track meet”. She was awarded with “Padmashree” by the Indian Government in 1984.

Kabadi is a team sport originated in Indian sub continent. The word “kabadi” gets continuously chanted during the game, where two teams play on either side. The meaning of this Hindi word is “holding of breath”. Breath control is very important in this team sport where two teams occupy opposite halves of a field and take turns to send a "runner" into the other half to win points by tagging members of the opposing team; the runner then tries to return to his own half, holding his breath the whole time!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.6 More Conversation

In this lesson you'll learn some words that help to make sentences flow more freely: bridging words. You'll also hear all about Indian smoking culture.

Bridging Words

In everyday sentences, we use 'bridging' words to help the sentence flow better.

The table below shows some common bridging phrases:

उस से पहले
usa sē pahalē
Before that

उस के बाद
usa kē bāda
After that

ऐसा
aisā
Like that

इसलिए
isaliē
That's why

यह बेहतर होगा
yaha bēhatara hōgā
It's better like that

ऐसा नहीं
aisā nahī̃
Not like that

Matalaba

Another useful word is "matalaba ". It has a number of different meanings, depending on the context. We'll list below some of its possible uses, but essentially, "matalaba " refers to 'meaning'.

क्या मतलब है?
kyā matalaba hai?
What's the meaning?

आप का क्या मतलब है?
āpa kā kyā matalaba hai?
What do you mean to say?

मेरा मतलब है..
mērā matalaba hai..
I mean to say...

सच में नहीं
saca mẽ nahī̃
Not really

These phrases will be particularly useful to you as a learner of Hindi. Often you'll find yourself using them to explain yourself better, or to question the meaning of something.

The one who...

It can often be difficult to explain to someone what or who we are referring to. वाला*wala* is a handy expression which can loosely be translated as 'the one'. It can be suffixed to almost anything and it a great way to refer to things. Here are just some of its uses.

यह वाला
yaha wālā
This one

चाय वाला
chāya wālā
A tea seller

रहनेवाला
rahanewālā
The resident

ऑटो वाला
auto wālā
An autorickshaw driver

आनेवाला
ānewālā
The coming (the one which is coming)

आनेवाली गाड़ी
ānewāli gādi
The incoming train

Culture: Smoking in India

By the beginning of the 17th century, tobacco introduced by Europeans was being grown in India. People used it as part of their daily relaxation, but ultimately it became an addiction.

Smoking has been considered as a way of entertainment for centuries. In spite of the threats it poses to health and longevity, smoking is still a prolific habit in many places all over the world.

India is no exception. The majority of males in India are smokers. Boys start the habit during adolescence and most of them find it hard to quit. Luckily, Indian culture prevents women from smoking. This is helpful in many ways, especially for pregnancy and child-rearing.

Some statistics state that one fifth of the total population in India are smokers. The government has been struggling to enforce laws banning public smoking. People in India are becoming more aware of the dangers of passive smoking and are more than willing to support the Government moves for absolute public smoking bans. The Tobacco Control Act in India only allows smoking and tobacco-use in designated smoking areas at airports and restaurants. Airports, hospitals, cinemas and other public places try to observe strict non-smoking policies by displaying posters and imposing penal fees- a welcome change!



7.7 Bargaining

In this lesson you’ll learn a collection of bargaining phrases, as well as some tips that will help you bargain more effectively and more respectfully in India.

Shopping Negotiations

Bargaining is part and parcel of shopping in India. If you can learn how to do this effectively you'll save yourself a lot of money!

Here are some very basic phrases to assist you with negotiations:

यह कितने का है?
yaha kitanē kā hai?
How much does it cost?

Or you may be buying several items and need to know the overall price.

कुल मिलाकर कितने का है?
kula milākara kitanē kā hai?
How much is it all together?

You may feel the asking price is too expensive, in which case you’ll say...

बहुत महंगा है
bahuta mahangā hai
That’s too expensive

You could counter offer...

मैं .... रुपए दूँगा
maĩ .... rupaē dū̃gā
I’ll give you... Rupees

You could tell them that you will not pay above a certain price...

मैं.......रूपए से नहीं दूंगा
maĩ .... rupaē se nahin dū̃gā
I will not give you more than...

Or ask him to lower the price...

क्या, कुछ कम कर सकते है?
kyā, kucha kama kara sakatē hai?
Can you lower the price?

Maybe you want to see it close up, you could say...

क्या, मैं ज़रा देख लूँ?
kyā, maĩ zarā dēkha lū̃?
Can I look at it?

You might decide you don’t like it

मुझे पसन्द नहीं आया
mujhē pasanda nahī̃ āyā
I don’t like it

You might want to ask if there are other things similar to it...

क्या इसके तरह कुछ और है?
kyā iske taraha kucha aura hai?

Is there anything else like this?

You might want to ask if they have any other colours or styles...

क्या यह दूसरे रंग में आता है?
kyā yaha dusre ranga men ātā hai?
Does this come in any other colours?

क्या आपके पास कोई और स्टाइल है?
kyā āpake pāsa koi aura stail hai?
Do you have any other styles?

If he's pressuring you to buy, you could say...

मैं सिर्फ़ देख रहा हूँ
maĩ sirfa dēkha rahā hū̃
I'm just browsing

If you do decide to take it you could say this as you give them the money...

ठीक है, मुझे दीजिए, यह पैसै लीजिए ।
thik hai, mujhe dijie, yaha paise lijie
OK, please give it to me, please take this money

Culture: Bargaining culture

The Indian markets, especially those in Delhi, are a massive attraction for tourists and locals alike. It's almost guaranteed that you'll see something in each stall that you'd like to buy! But patience, shop around...

You can browse around shops, watch local people shopping to get a feel of it and then decide what to buy and where to buy from. Most of the shops in tourist areas sell commodities at a higher price than normal inner city shops. So it would be a good idea to get an idea of standard prices of the items you are intending to buy. Your hotel staff could help you with this. As I mentioned earlier, most of the 'tourist' shops set their starting price at double or higher than the original price. There is no harm in offering half or even less of the quoted price. If the merchant is not willing to sell at your offer, you can just walk away. Sometimes, the seller follows you expressing his willingness to sell at your price! This is the kind of bargaining that takes place at all of the tourist area shops and especially among the street shops. But if you go to some malls or emporiums, you will have to pay the fixed amount. Bargaining is possible only in markets and streets.

Don't be upset if someone else got the same thing for a lesser price. Also don't bargain for things for the sake of bargaining. Bargaining is meant to bring the price to a level you are happy to pay. Bargaining is a skill and a theatrical art! It takes a while to get the hang of it. Remember that there is power in numbers. Shopping in a group, or buying in bulk will often get you large discounts.



Above all, have fun while you bargain. Keep a sense of humor, and try out your Hindi as much as possible!

7.9 Words for Sport Buffs

It's time to either write about some of your favourite sport, or if your not sporty - bluff your way through it!

Words for Sport Buffs

A Quick Check-Up

Alright, here are those words from last time, so how did you go?

दूल्हा
dūlhā
Groom

पत्नी
patnī
Wife

खुश
khuśa
Glad

बहू
bahū
Daughter in law

Which Sport do You Like?

Now, here's a bunch of important words for all you sport buffs. They may not be the games that you play, but they are popular sports in India.

फुटबॉल
phuṭabôla
Football

बास्केटबॉल
bāskēṭabôla
Basketball

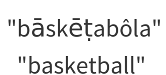
वालीबाल
vālībāla
Volleyball

टेनिस
ṭēnisa
Tennis

कबड्डी
kabaḍḍī
Kabadee

खो - खो
khō - khō
Kho Kho





"bāskēṭabôla"
"basketball"



"ṭēnisa"
"tennis"



"phuṭabôla"
"soccer"

Some words related to these games

नेट
net
Net

खेल पंच
khel paMch
Referee

खिलाडी
khiladee
Players

खेल
khel
Game

टीम
teem
Team

You can expect Indians to frequently use the English word for 'referee', even though there is a different word in Hindi.

Something to Practice

We'll leave you with a bunch of indefinite article verbs referring to, what else, sport! Try writing the script version of these words, and we'll check your answers in the next lesson.

Download

Jītanā

To win

Download

Hārna

To lose

Download

ḍrō **h**ō janā

To draw

Download

Vāpasa karnā

To withdraw

Good luck and we'll see how you went in our next writing lesson.

bāda mẽ milēngē!
बाद में मिलेंगे!
See you later!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.10 Smoking

Here's a few words that you'll be able to read and write about when the topic of smoking comes up.

Smoking

A Sporting Review

Here are those sporting verbs that we left you with last time.

जीतना
jītanā
To win

हारना
hāranā
To lose

ड्रो हो जाना
ḍrō hō jānā
To draw

वापस करना
vāpasa karanā
To withdraw

Now for Something Less Healthy...

These words are related to smoking.

सिगरेट
sigarēṭa
Cigarettes

हूक्का
hūkkā
Water pipe (hookah)

धूम्र
dhūmra
Smoke

धूम्रपान
dhūmrapāna
Smoking

एलेर्जी/चिढ
ēlarjī/ciḍha
Allergy

प्रदूषण
pradūṣaṇa
Pollution



Hookah

Homework

Here's your homework assignment. These words represent the four seasons, see how you go trying to write them in script!

Download

garmī

Summer

Download

sardī

Winter

Download

śarada r̥tu

Fall

Download

vasanta

Spring

Good luck! We'll see how you went in our next writing lesson.

āśā hai phira milanē kī!
आशा है फिर मिलने की!
Hope to meet you again!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

7.11 Types of Shops

These words will go hand in hand with exotic souvenir shopping.

Types of Shops

Four Seasons Review

Here are the four seasons. Did your spelling look anything like this?

गर्मी
garmī
Summer

सर्दी
sardī
Winter

शरद ऋतु
śarada r̥̄tu
Fall

वसन्त
vasanta
Spring

Shopping!

Following on from our lesson on shopping, here's a list of different types of shops.

किताब की दूकान
kitāba kī dūkāna
Bookshop

कपड़ों की दूकान
kapaṛō̃ kī dūkāna
Clothing store

यादगार वस्तुओं की दूकान
yādagāra vastuō̃ kī dūkāna
Souvenir shop

कैमरा की दूकान
kaimarā kī dūkāna
Camera shop

सुपरमार्केट
suparamārkēṭa
Supermarket

The following words might come in handy when you're at the souvenir shop.

हस्तकला
hastakalā
Handicraft

चमड़ा
camaṛā
Leather

गहनें
gahanẽ
Jewellery

कालीन
kālīna
Carpets

Maybe you're looking for clothes. See how you go writing these words without any help.

Download

kapaṛā

Clothing

Download

vastra / vēṣa

Dress

Download

paiṇṭa/ pantalūna

Pants

Download

kurtā/ śarṭa

Shirt



I do hope you enjoyed this lesson! Try to incorporate these new words you've learned into everyday language as much as possible. For instance when you're getting dressed in the morning, use the Hindi word for trousers; or perhaps when you're out shopping, try to identify shops with their Hindi name. Exercising your language learning brain like this will result in big improvements in memory!

hamhārē sātha dēnē kē liyē śukriyā!
हम्हारे साथ देने के लिये शुक्रिया!
Thank you for being with us!

7.12 Farewell phrases

Of course today is farewell, so some words of 'goodbye' are appropriate in our writing section today.

Farewell phrases

Homework Check

Here are the clothing words from the last lesson. How did you go?

कपड़ा
kapaṛā
Clothing

वस्त्र / वेष
vastra / vēṣa
Dress

पैंट / पन्तलून
paiṇṭa/ pantalūna
Pants

कुर्ता/ शर्ट
kurtā/ śarṭa
Shirt

So Long, Farewell...

Suppose you are leaving your host's house after a lovely evening and you want to bid them farewell. Try one of these phrases:

आप की याद आएगी
āpa kī yāda āēgī
I'll miss you

अलविदा
alavidā
Good bye

आपना ख्याल रखिएगा
āpanā khyāla rakhiēgā
Take care of yourself

फिर मिलेंगे
phira milēngē
See you again

अगले मिलन तक
agalē milana taka
Till we meet again


Goodbye

And other words related to going away.

मुझे बुलाइएगा
mujhē bulāiēgā
Call me

चिट्ठी
ciṭṭhī
Letter

तार
tāra
Telegraph

टेलिफ़ोन
ṭēlifōna
Telephone

हवाई अड्डा
havāī aḍḍā
Airport

सफ़र
safara
Travelling



So, this is the last lesson of Rocket Hindi Writing. I do hope you've enjoyed the journey and that you feel like your skills are improving. Remember that constant practice and use is the key. Speak and listen to Hindi whenever you can, you'll be surprised at how your confidence rockets as your skills increase!

Good luck and good bye for now!

alavidā
अलविदा
Good Bye!

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Body Parts

Learn the Hindi words for head and toes, and everything in between with this Rocket Hindi Bonus Lesson on body parts.

सिर
sira
head

बाल
bāla
hair

उसके काले बाल हैं
usakē kālē bāla hai
He / she has black hair

आँख
ā̃kha
eyes

नयन
nayana
eyes

एक आँख
ēka ā̃kha
one eye

कान
kāna
ear(s)

नाक
nāka
nose

मुंह
mũha
mouth

होंठ
hōṇṭha
lips

दांत
dānta
teeth

गाल
gāla
cheek

गर्दन
gardana
neck

सिर दर्द
sira darda

headache

दर्द
darda
pains

सिर में दर्द
sira mẽ darda
headache

मुझे सिर में दर्द है
mujhē sira mẽ darda hai
I have a headache

कंधा
kandhā
shoulders

बांह
bā̃ha
arm

कोहनी
kōhanī
elbow

कलाई
kalāī
wrist

हाथ
hātha
hand

उंगली
ungalī
finger

पेट
pēṭa
tummy

कमर
kamara
waist

मुझे पेट में दर्द है
mujhē pēṭa mẽ darda hai
I have a tummy ache

टांग
ṭānga
leg

टांगा
ṭāngā
horse cart

घुटना
ghuṭanā
knee

पिंडल

piṇḍala
calf

टकने
ṭakanē
ankle

पैर
paira
foot

पाँव
pā̃va
foot

पैर का अंगूठा
paira kā angūṭhā
toe

मेरे सिर में दर्द है
mērē sira mẽ darda hai
I have a headache

मेरे कान में दर्द है
mērē kāna mẽ darda hai
My ears hurt

मेरे गर्दन में दर्द है
mērē gardana mẽ darda hai
My neck hurts

मेरे दांत में दर्द है
mērē dānta mẽ darda hai
My teeth hurt

मेरे घुटने में दर्द है
mērē ghuṭanē mẽ darda hai
My knee hurts

मेरे बांह की हड्डी टूट गयी है
mērē bā̃ha kī haḍḍī ṭūṭa gayī hai
I've broken my arm

मेरे टांग की हड्डी टूट गयी है
mērē ṭānga kī haḍḍī ṭūṭa gayī hai
I've broken my leg

मेरे नाक की हड्डी टूट गयी है
mērē nāka kī haḍḍī ṭūṭa gayī hai
I've broken my nose

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

City

This Bonus Audio lesson will take you on a whirlwind tour of the big smoke. That's right, we're heading to the city...

शहर
śahara
city

कहाँ है?
kahā̃ hai?
Where is?/Where are?

कहाँ
kahā̃
Where

है
hai
Is

सार्वजनिक शौचालय
sārvajanika śaucālaya
public bathrooms

विश्रामालय
viśrāmālaya
hotel

विश्रामस्थल
viśrāmasthala
hotel

होटल
hōṭala
hotel

रेस्टोरेंट
rēsṭōrēṇṭa
restaurant

भोजनालय
bhōjanālaya
restaurant

दुकान
dukāna
shop

सुपरमार्केट
suparamārkēṭa
supermarket

डिपार्टमेन्ट स्टोर
ḍipārṭamēnṭa sṭōra
supermarket

बस स्टोप
basa sṭōpa

bus stop

टैक्सी स्टैंड
ṭaiksī sṭaiṇḍa
taxi stand

रेलवे स्टेशन
rēlavē sṭēśana
train station

सार्वजनिक शौचालय कहाँ है?
sārvajanika śaucālaya kahā̃ hai?
Where are the public bathrooms?

होटल कहाँ है?
hōṭala kahā̃ hai?
Where is the hotel?

होटल ओबेरॉय कहाँ है?
hōṭala ōbērôya kahā̃ hai?
Where is the hotel "Oberoi"?

रेस्टोरेंट पारडैस कहाँ है?
rēsṭōranṭa pāraḍaisa kahā̃ hai?
Where is the restaurant "Paradise"?

कहाँ है रेस्टोरेंट पारडैस ?
kahā̃ hai rēsṭōranṭa pāraḍaisa ?
Where is the restaurant "Paradise"?

क्या यहाँ ..?
kyā yahā̃ ..?
Is there..?

यहाँ
yahā̃
here

क्या यहाँ नज़दीक में कोयी अच्छा रेस्टोरेंट है?
kyā yahā̃ nazadīka mē̃ kōyī acchā rēsṭōrēṇṭa hai?
Is there a good restaurant near here?

दुकान कहाँ है?
dukāna kahā̃ hai?
Where is a store?

मैं एक दुकान ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ ēka dukāna ḍhūṇḍha rahā hū̃
I'm looking for a store

सूपरमार्कट कहाँ है?
sūparamārkaṭa kahā̃ hai?
Where is a supermarket?

कहाँ है सुपरमार्केट?
kahā̃ hai suparamārkēṭa?
Where is a supermarket?

बस स्टॉप कहाँ है ?
basa sṭôpa kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the bus stop?

कहाँ है बस स्टॉप?

kahā̃ hai basa sṭôpa?
Where is the bus stop?

टैक्सी स्टान्ड कहाँ है ?
Ṭaiksī sṭānḍa kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the taxi stand?

रेलवे स्टेशन कहाँ है ?
rēlavē sṭēśana kahā̃ hai ?
Where is the train station?

डाकघर
ḍākaghara
post office

बैंक
bainka
bank

पुलीस स्टेशन
pulīsa sṭēśana
police station

दवा खाना
davā khānā
pharmacy

दवा की दूकान
davā kī dūkāna
chemists

अस्पताल
aspatāla
hospital

डाक घर कहाँ है?
ḍāka ghara kahā̃ hai?
Where is the post office?

बैंक कहाँ है?
bainka kahā̃ hai?
Where is the bank?

पुलीस स्टेशन कहाँ है?
pulīsa sṭēśana kahā̃ hai?
Where is the police station?

अस्पताल कहाँ है?
aspatāla kahā̃ hai?
Where is the hospital?

दवाखाना कहाँ है?
davākhānā kahā̃ hai?
Where is the pharmacy?

पार्क
pārka
park

संग्रहालय
sangrahālaya
museum

चर्च
carca
church

किला
kilā
castle

प्रसिद्ध चर्च कहाँ है?
prasiddha carca kahā̃ hai?
Where is the famous church?

प्रसिद्ध संग्रहालय कहाँ है?
prasiddha sangrahālaya kahā̃ hai?
Where is the famous museum?

मैं पार्क ढूंढ रहा हूँ
maĩ pārka ḍhūṇḍha rahā hũ
I'm looking for the park

पार्क कहाँ है
pārka kahā̃ hai
I'm looking for the park

प्रसिद्ध किला कहाँ है?
prasiddha kilā kahā̃ hai?
Where is the famous castle ?

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Clothing

This lesson is for all you shop-a-holics! You'll learn loads of phrases and words related to that shopping spree you plan to indulge yourself with.

वस्त्र
vastra
clothing

कपड़ा
kapaṛā
clothing/ a clothe

पहनाव
pahanāva
clothing

कपड़े की दुकान
kapaṛē kī dukāna
clothing store

वस्त्र कोशघर
vastra kōśaghara
clothing store

महिला
mahilā
women (clothing)

पुरुष
puruṣa
men (clothing)

बच्चे
baccē
children (clothing)

शिशू
śiśū
babies (clothing)

जूते
jūtē
shoes

पंतलून
pantalūna
trousers

कच्चा
kaccā
underwear

कमीज़
kamīza
shirt

कुर्ता

kurtā
shirt

चोली
cōlī
blouse

ब्लौज़
blauza
blouse

टी शर्ट
ṭī śarṭa
t-shirt

स्वेटर
svēṭara
sweater

पसीना लानेवाला
pasīnā lānēvālā
sweaty (causing to sweat)

पसीना
pasīnā
to sweat

जैकेट
jaikēṭa
jacket

पोशाक
pōśāka
dress

स्कर्ट
skarṭa
skirt

टाई
ṭāī
tie

सूट
sūṭa
suit

निक्कर
nikkara
shorts

मैं ने पहना
maĩ nē pahanā
I wore (with masculine object)

मैं ने पहनी
maĩ nē pahanī
I wore (with feminine object)

मैं ने पहने
maĩ nē pahanē
I wore (with plural objects)

मैं पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ pahana rahā hū̃
I am wearing

पहनना
pahananā
to wear

मैं पांतलून पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ pāntalūna pahana rahā hū̃
I am wearing trousers

मैं स्वेटर पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ svēṭara pahana rahā hū̃
I am wearing a sweater

मैं जैकेट पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ jaikēṭa pahana rahā hū̃
I am wearing a jacket

मैं नीलेवाले जूते पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ nīlēvālē jūtē pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing blue shoes

मोज़े
mōzē
socks

मैं नीले मोज़े पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ nīlē mōzē pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing blue socks

मैं टी शर्ट पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ ṭī śarṭa pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing a t-shirt

मैं टाई पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ ṭāī pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing a tie

मैं पोशाक पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ pōśāka pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing a dress

मैं स्वेटर पहन रहा हूँ
maĩ svēṭara pahana rahā hū̃
I'm wearing a sweater

मैं ने जूते पहने
maĩ nē jūtē pahanē
I wore shoes

मैं ने पंतलून पहनी
maĩ nē pantalūna pahani
I wore trousers

मैं ने कमीज़ पहनी
maĩ nē kamīza pahanī
I wore a shirt

मैं ने ब्लाउज पहना
maĩ nē blouse pahanā
I wore a blouse

मैं ने चोली पहनी
maĩ nē choli pahanī
I wore a blouse

मैं ने स्वेटर पहना
maĩ nē svēṭara pahanā
I wore a sweater

मैं ने जैकेट पहनी
maĩ nē jaikēṭa pahani
I wore a jacket

मैं ने पोशाक पहनी
maĩ nē pōśāka pahani
I wore a dress

मैं ने स्कर्ट पहनी
maĩ nē skarṭ pahanī
I wore a skirt

मैं ने टाई पहनी
maĩ nē ṭāī pahanī
I wore a tie

मैं ने सूट पहना
maĩ nē sūṭa pahanā
I wore a suit

कपड़ो की दुकान
kapaṛō kī dukāna
clothing shop

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Colors

Welcome to this Rocket Hindi Bonus Lesson on colors! This lesson will teach you how to talk about all the primary colours, as well as the light and dark shades in between.

रंग
ranga
color

लाल
lāla
red

नारंगी
nārangī
orange

गुलाबी
gulābī
pink

पीला
pīlā
yellow

हरा
harā
green

नीला
nīlā
blue

बैंगनी
bainganī
purple

काला
kālā
black

सफ़ेद
safēda
white

भूरा
bhūrā
brown

मेरा पसंदीदा रंग नीला है
mērā pasandīdā ranga nīlā hai
My favorite color is blue.

मेरा पसंदीदा रंग
mērā pasandīdā ranga....
My favorite color is…

चांदी

cāndī
silver

सुनहरा
su-nah-ra
golden

गहरा
gaharā
dark

हल्का
halkā
light

गहरा नीला रंग
gaharā nīlā ranga
dark blue

हल्का हरा रंग
halkā harā ranga
light green

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350



Countries

Welcome to this Rocket Hindi Bonus Audio lesson on countries! By the time you're through, you'll be able to tell people where you're from, and even tell them which compass direction that's in.

पृथ्वी
pṛthvī
earth

महाद्वीप
mahādvīpa
continent

महासागर
mahāsāgara
ocean

अटलांटिक
aṭalāṇṭika
Atlantic (ocean)

प्रशान्त
praśānta
Pacific (ocean)

पैसिफिक
pasifik
Pacific (ocean)

अफ़्रीका
afrīkā
Africa

अंटार्टिक
aṇṭārṭik or antarctic
Antarctic

एशिया
ēśiyā
Asia

ऑस्ट्रेलिया
ôsṭrēliyā
Australia

यूरोप
yūrōpa
Europe

उत्तर अमेरिका
uttara amērikā
North America

दक्षिण अमेरिका
dakṣiṇa amērikā
South America

उत्तर

uttara
North,

दक्षिण
dakṣiṇa
South

पूर्व
pūrva
East

पश्चिम
paścima
West

कनाडा
kanāḍā
Canada

संयुक्त राज्य अमेरिका
saṁyukta rājya amērikā
United States

मेक्सिको
mēksikō
Mexico

राज्य
rājya
states

संयुक्त
saṁyukta
united

ब्राजील
brāzil
Brazil

अर्जेंटीना
arjēṇṭīnā
Argentina

चिली
cilī
Chile

पेरु
pēru
Peru

इक्वेडोर
ikvēḍōra
Ecuador

कोलंबिया
kōlambiyā
Colombia

जर्मनी
jarmanī
Germany

स्पेन
spēna
Spain

फ्रांस
phrā̃s
France

ग्रेट ब्रिटेन
grēṭa briṭēna
Great Britain

इटली
iṭalī
Italy

ग्रीस
grīsa
Greece

पोलैंड
pōlaiṇḍa
Poland

स्विजरलैंड
svijaralaiṇḍa
Switzerland

रूस
rūsa
Russia

चीन
cīna
China

भारत
bhārat
India

जापान
jāpāna
Japan

कोरिया
kōriyā
Korea

ऑस्ट्रेलिया
ôsṭrēliyā
Australia

न्यूज़ीलैंड
nyūzīlaiṇḍa
New Zealand

मिस्त्र
misra
Egypt

मोरक्को
mōrakkō
Morocco

दक्षिण अफ्रीका
dakṣiṇa aphrīkā
South Africa

केन्या
Kēn'yā
Kenya

कनेडियन
kanēḍiyana
Canadian

कनाडा वासी
kanāḍā vāsī
Canadian

मेक्सिकन
mēksikana
Mexican

ब्राज़िली
Brāzilī
Brazilian

ब्राज़िल का
brāzila kā
Brazilian

अर्जन्टीनी
arjanṭīnī
Argentinian

पेरु का निवासी
pēru kā nivāsī
Peruvian

इक्वेडोर निवासी
ikvēḍōra nivāsī
Ecuadorian

कोलंबियन
Kōlāmbiyān
Colombian

स्पेन देश का निवासी
spēna dēśa kā nivāsī
Spanish

फ्रांसीसी
phrā̃sīsī
French

फ्रांस देश का निवासी
phr̲ā̃s dēś kā nivāsī
French citizen

जर्मन
jarmana
German

जर्मन देश का निवासी
jarmana dēśa kā nivāsī
German

इटली निवासी
iṭalī nivāsī
Italian

इटली देश का निवासी
iṭalī dēś kā nivāsī
Italian citizen

ग्रीस देश का निवासी
grīsa dēś kā nivāsī
Greek citizen

रूसी
rūsī
Russian

चीनी
cīnī
Chinese

चीन का
cīna kā
Chinese

भारतीय
bhāratīya
Indian

भारतवासी
bhāratavāsī
Indian

जापानी
jāpānī
Japanese

जापानवासी
jāpānavāsī
Japanese

कोरियाई
kōriyāī
Korean

कोरिअन
kōriana
Korean

अस्त्रेलियायी
āsṭrēliyan
Australian

आस्ट्रेलियन
astrēliyāyī
Australian

न्यूजीलैन्डेर
nyūjīlainḍēra
New Zealander

मिस्त्रनिवासी
misranivāsī
Egyptian

मरोकन
marōkana
Moroccan

दक्षिण अफ्रीकी
dakṣiṇa aphrīkī
South Africans

आप कहाँ से हैं ?
āpa kahā̃ sē haĩ ?
Where are you from?

तुम कहाँ से हो?
tuma kahā̃ sē hō?
Where are you from?

मैं... से हूँ
maĩ... sē hū̃
I am from...

से आया
sē āyā
I come from

मैं दक्षिण अफ्रीकी से हूँ
maĩ dakṣiṇa aphrīkī sē hū̃
I am from South Africa

मैं स्पेन से हूँ
maĩ spēna sē hū̃
I am from Spain

मैं जापान से हूँ
maĩ jāpāna sē hū̃
I am from Japan

मैं इटली से हूँ
maĩ iṭalī sē hū̃
I am from Italy

मैं इटली देश का हूँ
maĩ iṭalī dēśa kā hū̃
I'm Italian

मैं अमेरिकी हूँ
maĩ amērikī hū̃
I'm American

मैं कनाडियन हूँ
maĩ kanāḍiyana hū̃
I'm Canadian

मैं भारत देश से हूँ
maĩ bhārata dēśa sē hū̃
I am from India

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Days

Never miss an important date! This Rocket Hindi Bonus Audio Lesson will teach you how to express days of the week, months, and dates.

सोमवार
sōmavāra
Monday

मंगलवार
mangalavāra
Tuesday

बुधवार
budhavāra
Wednesday

गुरुवार
guruvāra
Thursday

शुक्रवार
śukravāra
Friday

शनिवार
śanivāra
Saturday

रविवार
ravivāra
Sunday

इतवार
itavāra
Sunday

जनवरी
janavarī
January

फरवरी
pharavarī
February

मार्च
mārca
March

अप्रैल
apraila
April

मई
maī
May

जून

jūna
June

जुलाई
julāī
July

अगस्त
agasta
August

सितंबर
sitambara
September

अक्टूबर
akṭūbara
October

नवंबर
navambara
November

दिसंबर
disambara
December

चौदह फ़रवरी 2007
caudaha faravarī 2007
the 14th of February 2007

एक फ़रवरी
ēka faravarī
the 1st of February

दो फ़रवरी
dō faravarī
the 2nd of February

तीन फ़रवरी
tīna
the 3rd of February

चार फ़रवरी
cāra faravarī
the 4th of February

पाँच फ़रवरी
pā̃ca faravarī
the 5th of February

छह फ़रवरी
chaha faravarī
the 6th of February

सात फ़रवरी
sāta faravarī
the 7th of February

बारह नवंबर 1980
bāraha navambara 1980
November 12th 1980

तीस अगस्त 1972
tīsa agasta 1972
August 30th 1972

चार जुलाई
cāra julāī
The 4th of July

एक अप्रैल
ēka apraila
The 1st of April

एक मई
ēka maī
The 1st of May

पच्चीस दिसंबर
paccīsa disambara
The 25th of December

पन्द्रह अगस्त
pandraha agasta
The 15th of August

छब्बीस जनवरी
chabbīsa janavarī
The 26th of January

छह अगस्त
chaha agasta
The 6th of August

आठ सितंबर दो हज़ार सात
āṭha sitambara dō hazāra sāta
September 8th, 2007

दो हज़ार
dō hazāra
2000

दो हज़ार एक
dō hazāra ēka
2001

दो हज़ार दो
dō hazāra dō
2002

दो हज़ार तीन
dō hazāra tīna
2003

दो हज़ार चार
dō hazāra cāra
2004

दो हज़ार पाँच
dō hazāra pā̃ca
2005

दो हज़ार छह
dō hazāra chaha
2006

दो हज़ार सात
dō hazāra sāta
2007

दो हज़ार आठ
dō hazāra āṭha
2008

दो हज़ार नौ
dō hazāra nau
2009

मौसम
mausama
seasons

वसन्त
Vasanta
Spring

गर्मी
garmī
Summer

बरसात
barasāta
Rainy/Monsoon

शरद
śarada
Autumn, or fall,

हेमन्त
hēmanta
Late autumn

सर्दी
sardī
Winter

शीत
śīta
Winter

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Food

Spicy **sambar** or cool **kachumber**? No matter what your tastes, this lesson will equip you with all the words you need to order your favourite meals and drinks in India.

एक कप कॉफ़ी
ēka kapa kôfī
a cup of coffee

दूध के साथ
dūdha kē sātha
with milk

कृपया एक कप ब्लाक कॉफ़ी मिलेगी?
kṛpayā ēka kapa blāka kôfī milēgī?
Can I have a cup of black coffee please

एक कप मसाला चाय
ēka kapa masālā cāya
a cup of Masala tea

कृपया
kṛpayā
please

कृपया मुझे और थोडी चीनी चाहिए
kṛpayā mujhē aura thōḍī cīnī cāhiē
Can I have more sugar please?

एक कप चाय मिलेगी?
ēka kapa cāya milēgī?
a cup of tea?

एक कप तुलसी चाय मिलेगी
ēka kapa tulasī cāya milēgī
a cup of Tulsi tea

एक कप ग्रीन चाय मिलेगी
ēka kapa grīna cāya milēgī
a cup of green tea

एक कप हरी चाय मिलेगी
ēka kapa harī cāya milēgī
a cup of green tea

कृपया एक गिलास संतरे का रस मिलेगा?
kṛpayā ēka gilāsa santarē kā rasa milēgā?
a cup of orange juice please

गिलास
gilāsa
glass

कृपया एक गिलास दूध
kṛpayā ēka gilāsa dūdha
a cup of milk please

एक गिलास निम्बू पानी

ēka gilāsa nimbū pānī
a cup of lemonade

एक नारियल पानी
ēka nāriyala pānī
coconut juice

एक बियर
ēka biyara
a beer

एक गिलास रेड वाइन
ēka gilāsa rēḍa vāina
a glass of red wine

एक गिलास वैट वाइन
ēka gilāsa vaiṭa vāina
a glass of white wine

चपाती
capātī
round flat bread

रोटी
rōṭī
round flat bread

आलू
ālū
potato

लस्सी
lassī
yogurt drink

पराठा
parāṭhā
stuffed chapati

सब्ज़ी
sabzī
vegetables

पूरी
pūrī
fried chapati

नान
nāna
Naan bread

समोसा
samōsā
Samosa

पकोड़ा
pakōṛā
Fried snacks

चावल
cāvala
rice

अचार
acāra
pickle

चटनी
caṭanī
pickle

दाल
dāla
lentils

आलू गोबी
ālū gōbī
potato and cauliflower

पापड़
pāpaṛa
papad

दही
dahī
yogurt

पनीर
panīra
cheese

तन्दूरी मुर्गा
tandūrī murga
tandoori chicken

टिक्का मसाला
ṭikkā masālā
Tikka Masaalaa

मुर्गा
murga
chicken

कबाब
kabāba
kebabs

बिरयानी
birayānī
biryani

मछ्ली
machlī
fish

शाकाहारी खाना
śākāhārī khānā
vegetarian food

गुलाब जामुन
gulāba jāmuna
A sweet dish made of milk products and sugar syrup

रसगुल्ला
rasagullā
A sweet dish made of milk products and sugar syrup

कुल्फ़ी
kulfī
Indian style ice cream with a selection of nuts, normally served in a small mud pot.

खीर
khīra
Indian pudding

आइसक्रीम
āisakrīma
ice cream

कस्टर्ड फ्रूट
kasṭarḍa frūṭa
custard fruit

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

House

Making a move to India? This lesson is just what you need! Here you'll learn words for various items around the house, as well as the phrases you'll need to know if you're renting an apartment.

मकान
makāna
house

अपार्टमेंट
apārṭamēṇṭa
apartment

फ्लैट/ अपार्टमेंट
phlaiṭa / apārṭamēṇṭa
flat/apartment

कमरा
kamarā
room

झगा
jhagā
room

कमरा लेना
kamarā lēnā
room

घर
ghara
home

सुसज्जित अपार्टमेंट
susajjita apārṭamēṇṭa
furnished apartment

सुसज्जित
susajjita
furnished

सुसज्जित कमरा
susajjita kamarā
furnished room

क्या यह सुसज्जित है?
kyā yaha susajjita hai?
Is it furnished?

मुझे तीन शयनकक्ष का घर चाही ये
mujhē tīna śayanakakṣa kā ghara cāhī yē
I want a house with three bedrooms

शयनकक्ष
śayanakakṣa
bedroom

कितने शयनकक्ष है इस घर में

kitanē śayanakakṣa hai isa ghara mẽ
How many bedrooms does it have

कितने
kitanē
How many

आह / है
āha / hai
Has

मुझे दो शयनकक्ष वाला अपार्टमेंट चाहिए
mujhē dō śayanakakṣa vālā apārṭamēṇṭa cāhiē
I want a house with two bedrooms

मुझे एक शयनकक्ष वाला अपार्टमेंट चाहिए
mujhē ēka śayanakakṣa vālā apārṭamēṇṭa cāhiē
I want a house with one bedroom

बावर्चीखाना
bāvarcīkhānā
kitchen

रसोईघर
rasōīghara
kitchen

भोजन कक्ष
bhōjana kakṣa
dining room

बैठकख़ाना
baiṭhakaḵẖānā
living room

स्नानघर
snānaghara
bathroom

अलमारी
alamārī
wardrobe, or closet

दफ़्तर
daftara
Office

कारिडर
kāriḍara
hallway/corridor

सीढी
sīḍhī
staircase

गेराज
gērāja
garage

बगीचा
bagīcā
garden

आँगन
ā̃gana
backyard

बिस्तर
bistara
bed

तकिया
takiyā
pillow

कंबल
kambala
blanket

बाथटब
bāthaṭaba
bathtub

शावर
śāvara
shower

सिंक
sinka
sink

शौचालय
śaucālaya
toilet

आईना
āīnā
mirror

चूल्हा
cūlhā
stove

तन्दूर
tandūra
tandoor

भट्ठी
bhaṭṭhī
stove

फ़्रिज
frija
refrigerator

फ़्रीज़र
frīzara
freezer

डिश वाशर
ḍiśa vāśara
dishwasher

मेज़
mēza
table

मेज़पोश
mēzapōśa
tablecloth

तब्लेक्लोथ
tablēklōtha
tablecloth

कुर्सी
kursī
chair

थाली
thālī
plate

प्याला
pyālā
cup

छुरी
churī
knife

चम्मच
cammaca
spoon

कांटा
kāṇṭā
fork

सोफा
sōpha
sofa

टेलीविज़न
ṭēlīvizana
television

स्टीरियो
sṭīriyō
stereo

कालीन
kālīna
carpet/rug

कम्प्यूटर
kampyūṭara
computer

प्रिंटर
priṇṭara
printer

टेलिफ़ोन
ṭēlifōna
telephone

शेल्फ़
śēlfa
shelves

पुस्तक
pustaka
book

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Numbers (Part 1)

Time is a tickin' as we learn all there is to know to about counting siblings, tickets and multiplication, plus how to do a countdown (or up) in this Rocket Hindi Bonus Audio lesson. Eggs and concert tickets will be the ultimate motivator in this lesson!

संख्या
saṁkhyā
One number

संख्यायें
saṁkhyāyēँ
Numbers

शून्य
śūnya
Zero

एक
ēka
1

दो
dō
2

तीन
tīna
3

चार
cāra
4

पाँच
pāँca
5

छह
chaha
6

सात
sāta
7

आठ
āṭha
8

नौ
nau
9

दस
dasa
10

ग्यारह

gyāraha
11

बारह
bāraha
12

अंडे
aṇḍē
Eggs

दूकान
dūkāna
store

कितने चाहिए ?
kitanē cāhiē ?
How many?

कितने अंडे चाहिए ?
kitanē aṇḍē cāhiē ?
How many eggs ?

कितने के चाहिए ?
kitanē kē cāhiē ?
How many would you like?

मुझे एक चाहिए
mujhē ēka cāhiē
I want one

मुझे चाहिए
mujhē cāhiē
I want

तुम्हें कितने अंडे चाहिए ?
tumhẽ kitanē aṇḍē cāhiē ?
How many eggs do you want?

मुझे छह चाहिए
mujhē chaha cāhiē
I want six

मुझे पाँच चाहिए
mujhē pā̃ca cāhiē
I want five

मुझे दस अंडे चाहिए
mujhē dasa aṇḍē cāhiē
I want ten eggs

कितने टिकट चाहिए ?
kitanē ṭikaṭa cāhiē ?
How many tickets do you want?

तुम्हें कितने टिकट चाहिए ?
tumhẽ kitanē ṭikaṭa cāhiē ?
How many tickets do you want?

मुझे तीन टिकट चाहिए
mujhē tīna ṭikaṭa cāhiē
I want three tickets

मुझे छह टिकट चाहिए
mujhē chaha ṭikaṭa cāhiē.
I want six tickets

कितने टिकट चाहिए आप को?
kitanē ṭikaṭa cāhiē āpa kō?
How many tickets do you want? (polite)

मुझे दो टिकट चाहिए
mujhē dō ṭikaṭa cāhiē
I want two tickets

कितने ?
kitanē ?
How many?

मुझे एक टिकट चाहिए
mujhē ēka ṭikaṭa cāhiē
I want one ticket

तुम्हारे कितने बहन है?
tumhārē kitanē bahana hai?
How many sisters do you have?

तुम्हारे कितने भाई बहन हैं?
tumhārē kitanē bhāī bahana haĩ?
How many brothers and sisters do you have?

मेरे तीन भाई हैं
mērē tīna bhāī haĩ
I have three brothers

मेरी तीन बहनें हैं
mērī tīna bahanẽ haĩ
I have three sisters

प्लस
plasa
Plus

एक प्लस एक है
ēka plasa ēka hai
One plus one is

एक प्लस एक बराबर दो
ēka plasa ēka barābara dō
One plus one equals two

एक और एक है
ēka aura ēka hai
One and one is

एक प्लस दो है
ēka plasa dō hai
One plus two is

दो और दो है
dō plasa aura hai
Two and two is

तीन प्लस तीन है
tīna plasa tīna hai
Three plus three is

तीन और चार है
tīna aura cāra hai
Three and four is

दो प्लस आठ है
dō plasa āṭha hai
Two plus eight is

शून्य और शून्य है
śūnya aura śūnya hai
Zero and zero is

दस प्लस दो है
dasa plasa dō hai
Ten plus two is

घाटना
ghāṭanā
Minus

तीन में से एक घाटा है दो
tīna mẽ sē ēka ghāṭā hai dō
Three minus one is two

सात में से चार घाटे
sāta mẽ sē cāra ghāṭē
Seven minus four is

दस में से छह घाटे
dasa mẽ sē chaha ghāṭē
Ten minus six is

ग्यारह में से पाँच घाटे
gyāraha mẽ sē pā̃ca ghāṭē
Eleven minus five is

नौ में से सात घाटे
nau mẽ sē sāta ghāṭē
Nine minus seven is

सात में से दो घाटे
sāta mẽ sē dō ghāṭē
Seven minus two is

बारह में से चार घाटे
bāraha mẽ sē cāra ghāṭē
Twelve minus four is

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350

Numbers (Part 2)

It's time to start counting with the big boys; learn to count from ten to one million! You'll also discover how to tell someone your age, and learn how to produce exact change. So what year were you born in again…?

ग्यारह
gyāraha
11

बारह
bāraha
12

तेरह
tēraha
13

चौदह
caudaha
14

पन्द्रह
pandraha
15

सोलह
sōlaha
16

सत्रह
satraha
17

अठारह
aṭhāraha
18

उन्नीस
unnīsa
19

बीस
bīsa
20

इक्कीस
ikkīsa
21

बाईस
bāīsa
22

तेइस
tēisa
23

चौबीस

caubīsa
24

पच्चीस
paccīsa
25

छब्बीस
chabbīsa
26

सताइस
satāisa
27

अट्ठाइस
aṭṭhāisa
28

उनतीस
unatīsa
29

तीस
tīsa
30

चालीस
cālīsa
40

पच्चास
paccāsa
50

साठ
sāṭha
60

सत्तर
sattara
70

अस्सी
assī
80

नब्बे
nabbē
90

सौ
sau
100

आप की आयु कितनी है?
āpa kī āyu kitanī hai?
How old are you?

मैं ... साल का हूँ
maĩ ... sāla kā hū̃
I am.... Years old

मैं तीस साल का हूँ
maĩ tīsa sāla kā hũ̄
I am 30 years old

मैं पच्चास साल का हूँ
maĩ paccāsa sāla kā hũ̄
I am 50 years old

मैं उन्नीस साल का हूँ
maĩ unnīsa sāla kā hũ̄
I am 19 years old

मैं अस्सी साल का हूँ
maĩ assī sāla kā hũ̄
I am 80 years old

मैं चालीस साल का हूँ
maĩ cālīsa sāla kā hũ̄
I am 40 years old

एक सौ
ēka sau
100 (one hundred)

एक सौ एक
ēka sau ēka
101

एक सौ दो
ēka sau dō
102

एक सौ बीस
ēka sau bīsa
120

एक सौ बाईस
ēka sau bāīsa
122

दो सौ
dō sau
200

तीन सौ
tīna sau
300

चार सौ
cāra sau
400

पाँच सौ
pā̃ca sau
500

छह सौ
chaha sau
600

सात सौ
sāta sau
700

आठ सौ
āṭha sau
800

नौ सौ
nau sau
900

हज़ार
hazāra
Thousand

एक हज़ार
ēka hazāra
1000 (One thousand)

दो हज़ार
dō hazāra
2000

तीन हज़ार
tīna hazāra
3000

चार हज़ार
cāra hazāra
4000

पाँच हज़ार
pā̃ca hazāra
5000

छह हज़ार
chaha hazāra
6000

सात हज़ार
sāta hazāra
7000

आठ हज़ार
āṭha hazāra
8000

नौ हज़ार
nau hazāra
9000

दस लाख
dasa lākha
Million

USA: 3503 Jack Northrop Ave, Suite #P1171, Hawthorne, CA 90250, USA | Phone: 703-349-0452
Asia/Pacific: 2-1008 Ferry Road, Woolston, Christchurch 8023, New Zealand | Phone: +64-3-384-6350